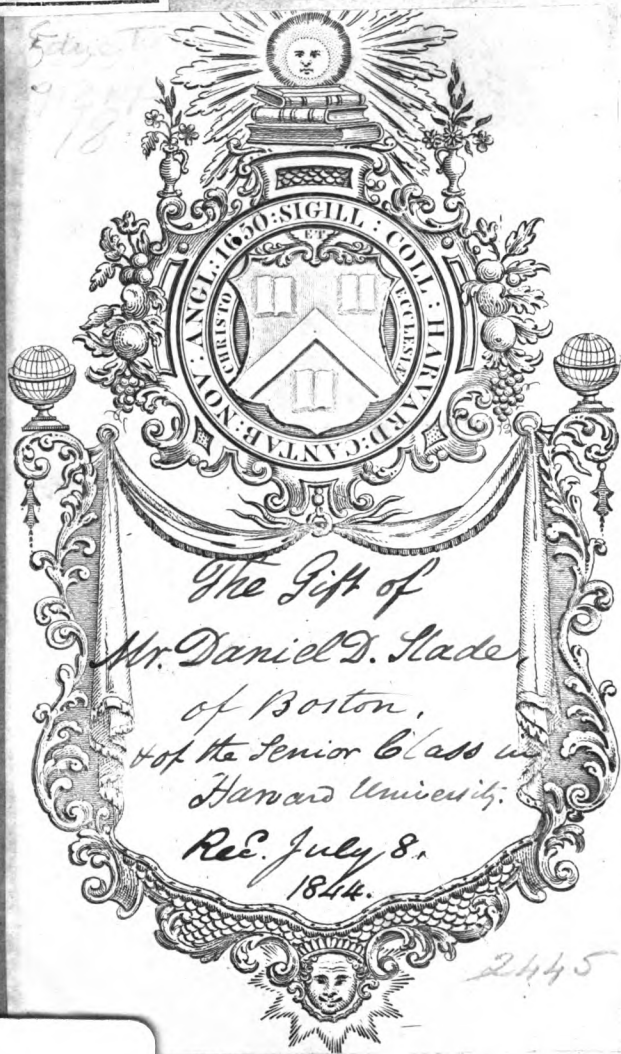

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>



Edw T
9/8.14.120





3 2044 097 065 932

THE
RUDIMENTS
OF
LATIN GRAMMAR.

BY ALEXANDER ADAM, LL. D.

Rector of the High School of Edinburgh.

REVISED AND ABRIDGED BY EBENEZER FITCH, D. D.

PRESIDENT OF WILLIAMS' COLLEGE.

RECOMMENDED BY THE TRUSTEES OF SAID COLLEGE, TO BE
USED BY THOSE WHO ARE INTENDED FOR
THAT SEMINARY.

FOURTH EDITION.

TROY:

PRINTED BY PARKER AND BLISS,

Sold at the Troy Bookstore, sign of the Bible, and by the
principal Booksellers.

.....
1814.

Edge T 918.14.120

~~5253, 78~~

~~Edge T 918.14~~

DISTRICT OF NEW-YORK, ss.

BE IT REMEMBERED, that on the Fifteenth day of June, in the thirty-eighth year of the Independence of the United States of America, WILLIAM S. PARKER and PELLATIAH BLISS, of the said District, have deposited in this office the title of a Book the right whereof they claim as proprietors, in the words following, to wit:

"The RUDIMENTS OF LATIN GRAMMAR. By Alexander Adam, LL. D. Rector of the High School of Edinburgh. Revised and Abridged by Ebenezer Fitch, D. D. President of Williams' College. Recommended by the Trustees of said college to be used by those who are intended for that seminary."

In conformity to the Act of the Congress of the United States, entitled "An Act for the encouragement of Learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts, and Books to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the time therein mentioned." And also to an Act, entitled "an Act supplementary to an Act, entitled an Act for the encouragement of Learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts, and Books to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned, and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of designing, engraving and etching historical and other prints."

THERON RUDD,

Clerk of the Southern District of New-York.

EXTRACTS

FROM THE AUTHOR'S ADVERTISEMENT.

THE materials of this Grammar are collected from the best Grammarians, chiefly from Mr. Ruddiman. In this edition there are several improvements. The *Syntax* is greatly enlarged, by the addition of many useful observations and examples; and particularly by a full explanation of the different meaning and construction of Verbs and Prepositions, and of those phrases which occasion most difficulty to learners, collected from the Classics, and from the best writers on Latinity.

By the natural division of words and sentences into Simple and Compound, no rule or example is introduced in *Syntax* or *Prosody*, till the learner is properly prepared, by what goes before, to understand it; which is not the case in the Latin Grammars commonly used: where, not to mention other instances, the construction of the Relative, which requires a previous acquaintance with most of the other rules of construction, is placed near the beginning of *Syntax*; and, what appears still more preposterous, in *Prosody*, the rules concerning the quantity of compounds are placed before those concerning the quantity of simple words. These improprieties in arrangement occasion greater inconvenience to learners than is generally imagined.

After the *Syntax*, there is a brief account and explanation of the various *Tropes* and *Figures* of words and of thought, which occur in the Classics, compiled from the most approved authors, chiefly from *Quintilian*, and *Marsais sur les Tropes*.

The greatest care has every where been taken, to make the translation of Latin words and phrases subservient to the knowledge of English. These, and several other particulars not mentioned, it is hoped, will be found to be improvements of some importance in the plan of Education.

ADVERTISEMENT

OF THE PRESIDENT AND TRUSTEES OF WILLIAMS'
COLLEGE.

THE inconvenience and disadvantage experienced both by instructors and students, from the use of different Latin Grammars, render it highly expedient to establish a uniformity in this College. Adam's Latin Grammar, which by very good judges, is considered as the best and most complete Grammar of the Latin Language, has for several years been generally used in this seminary. But the English part of this Grammar, which very considerably increases its size and price, is found by experience to be not only useless but very inconvenient to the student and instructor. An Abridgment of this Grammar having been shown to us, in which the English part, and other useless parts are omitted, we hereby recommend this cheap, abridged and more convenient Edition to all students who expect to resort to this College for education, and direct that all who are hereafter admitted as members of this seminary use it in their classical exercises.

Williamstown, Dec 30, 1805.

THE
RUDIMENTS
OF
LATIN GRAMMAR.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

Latin Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words; Words consist of one or more syllables; Syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole subject of Grammar.

LETTERS.

That part of Grammar which treats of letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five: A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

Six are vowels; a, e, i, o, u, y. All the rest are consonants.

A vowel makes a full sound by itself ; as, *a, e.*

A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel ; as, *b, d.*

A vowel is properly called a *simple sound* ; and the sounds formed by the concurrence of vowels and consonants, *articulate sounds.*

Consonants are divided into *Mutes, Semi-vowels, and Double Consonants.*

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice ; as, *p* in *ap.*

The mutes are, *p, b ; t, d ; c, k, q,* and *g* : but *b, d,* and *g,* perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes.*

A semi-vowel, or half-vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice ; thus, *al.*

The semi-vowels are, *l, m, n, r, s, f.* The first four of these are also called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r* ; because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable ; as, *bla, stra.*

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them ; as, *pe, be,* &c. : but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them ; as, *el, em,* &c.

The double consonants are *x, z,* and *j.* *X* is made up of *cs, ks,* or *gs.* *Z* seems not to be a double consonant in English. It has the same relation to *s,* as *v* has to *f,* being sounded somewhat more softly.

In Latin, *x,* and likewise *k,* and *y,* are found only in words derived from the Greek.

Y in English is sometimes a consonant, as in *youth.*

H by some is not accounted a letter, but only a breathing.

DIPHTHONGS.

A Diphthong is two vowels joined in one sound.

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong* ; if not, an *Improper Diphthong.*

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three ; *au, eu, ei* ; as in *aurum, Eurus, omneis.* To these, some, not improperly, add other three, namely, *ai* ; as in *Maia* ; *oi*, as in *Troia* ; and *ui*, as in *Harpuia* ; or in *cui* and *buic*, when pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two, *ae*, or when the vowels are written together, *e*; as *aetas*, or *etas*; *oe*, or *a*; as, *poena*, or *pæna*; in both which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately, thus, *aetas*, *poena*.

SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters pronounced by one impulse of the voice.

In every word there are as many syllables as there are distinct sounds.

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word, as there are vowels or diphthongs in it; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g*, *q*, or *s*, as in *lingua*, *qui*, *suadeo*; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable, are called *Monosyllables*; of two, *Disyllables*; and of more than two, *Poly-syllables*. But all words of more than one syllable, are commonly called *Poly-syllables*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *up-on*, *with-out*, &c. and so in Latin words, *ab-utor*, *in-crs*, *propter-ea*, *et-enim*, &c. In like manner, when a syllable is added in the formation of the English verb; as, *lov-ed*, *lov-ing*, *lov-eth*, *will-ing*, &c.

Observe, A long syllable is thus marked [-]; as, *amāre*; or with a circumflex accent thus, [^]; as, *amāris*. A short syllable is marked thus [˘]; as, *omnibus*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables, to accent, and verse, will be treated of afterwards.

WORDS.

A word is one or more syllables joined together, which men have agreed upon to signify something.

That part of Grammar which treats of words, is called *Etymology*, or *Analogy*.

All words may be divided into three kinds ; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things ; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things ; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words ; or what are called *Substantives*, *Attributives*, and *Connectives*. Thus, in the following sentence, "*The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home,*" the words *boy*, *lesson*, *school*, *home*, are the names we give to the things spoken of ; *diligent*, *reads*, *carefully*, express what is affirmed concerning the boy ; *the*, *in*, *and*, *at*, are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive* or *derivative*.

The division of words into simple and compound, is called their *Figure* ; into primitive and derivative, their *Species* or kind.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one, as *pious*, *pious* ; *ego*, I ; *doceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words ; or of one word, and some syllable added ; as, *impious*, *impious* ; *dedoceo*, I unteach ; *egomet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other ; as, *pious*, *pious* ; *disco*, I learn ; *doceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word ; as, *pietas*, *piety* ; *doctrina*, *learning*.

The different classes into which we divide words, are called *Parts of Speech*.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight ; 1. *Noun*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Participle* ; declined : 2. *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, and *Conjunction* ; undeclined.

Declinable parts of speech are those which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of words.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words which admit of different terminations were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied

only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

The English language has one part of speech more than the Latin, namely, the ARTICLE.

The want of the article is a defect in the Latin tongue, and often renders the meaning of nouns undetermined : thus *filius regis*, may signify, either, *a son of a king*, or, *a king's son* ; or *the son of the king*, or *the king's son*.

NOUN.

A noun is either substantive or adjective.

The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun* : it is only a word *added* to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality ; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech. But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.

SUBSTANTIVE.

A Substantive, or noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing ; as, *boy, school, book*.

Substantives are of two sorts ; *proper* and *common* names.

Proper names are the names appropriated to individuals ; as the names of persons and places : such are, *Cæsar, Rome*.

Common names stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts ; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them ; as, *animal, man*.

Every particular being should have its own proper name ; but this is impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude : men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind ; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it ; as, when we say of some great conqueror, " He is *an* Alexander ;" or, " *The* Alexander of his age."

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and

are called *abstract nouns* ; as, *hardness, goodness, whiteness, virtue, justice, piety, &c.*

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number* ; when two or more, of the *plural*.

Things considered according to their kinds, are either male or female, or neither of the two. Males are said to be of the *masculine gender* ; females of the *feminine* ; and all other things, of the *neuter gender*.

Such nouns as are applied to signify either the male or the female, are said to be of the *common gender*, that is, either masculine or feminine.

Various methods are used, in different languages, to express the different connexions or relations of one thing to another. In the English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive ; in Latin, by declension, or by different cases ; that is, by changing the termination of the noun ; as, *rex*, a king, or the king ; *regis*, of a king, or of the king.

LATIN NOUNS.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders, Cases, and Numbers*.

There are three genders, *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter*.

The cases are six, *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative*.

There are two numbers, *Singular and Plural*.

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called, the *first, second, third, fourth, and fifth declensions*.

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called, from *cadere* to fall ; because they fall, as it were, from the nominative ; which is therefore

named *casus rectus*, the straight case ; and the other cases, *casus obliqui*, the oblique cases.

The different declensions may be distinguished from one another by the termination of the genitive singular. The first declension has *a* dipthong ; the second has *i* ; the third has *is* ; the fourth has *us* ; and the fifth has *ii* in the genitive.

Although Latin nouns be said to have six cases, yet none of them have that number of different terminations, both in the singular and plural.

GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative, in both numbers ; and these cases in the plural end always in *a*.

2. The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike.

3. The Vocative for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is the same with the Nominative.

Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative ; as, *Thomas, Thoma* ; *Anchises, Anchise* ; *Paris, Pari* ; *Pantheus, Panthu* ; *Pallas, -antis, Palla*, names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension oftener retain the *s* ; as, *ô Achilles, or -e* ; *O Socrates, or -e* : and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as* ; as, *O Thais, Myfit, Pallas, -adis*, the goddess Minerva, &c.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural :

Unless several of the same name be spoken of ; as, *duodecim Cæsares*, the twelve Cæsars.

GENDER.

Nouns in Latin are said to be of different genders, not merely from the distinction of sex, but chiefly from their being joined with an adjective of one termination, and

not of another. Thus, *penna*, a pen, is said to be feminine, because it is always joined with an adjective in that termination, which is applied to females ; as, *bona penna*, a good pen, and not *bonus penna*.

The gender of nouns which signify things without life, depends on their termination, and different declension.

To distinguish the different genders, grammarians make use of the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine ; *hec*, the feminine ; and *hoc*, the neuter.

GENERAL RULES CONCERNING GENDER.

1. Names of males are masculine ; as, *Homērus*, Homer ; *pater*, a father ; *poēta*, a poet.

2. Names of females are feminine ; as, *Helēna*, Helen ; *mulier*, a woman ; *uxor*, a wife ; *mater*, a mother ; *foror*, a sister ; *Tellus*, the Goddess of the earth.

3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender ; that is, either masculine or feminine ; as, *Hic bos*, an ox ; *hec bos*, a cow ; *hic parens*, a father ; *hec parens*, a mother.

The following list comprehends most nouns of the common gender.

Adölescens, { a young	Conjux, a husband, or	Nemo, no body.
Juvenis, { man, or	wife.	Obses, an hostage.
Affinis, a relation by	Conviva, a guest.	Patruëlis, a cousin-ger-
marriage.	Gustos, a keeper.	man, by the father's side.
Antistes, a prelate.	Dux, a leader.	Prætor, a surety.
Auctor, an author.	Hæres, an heir.	Princeps, a prince or
Augur, a soothsayer.	Hostis, an enemy.	prince.
Canis, a dog or bitch.	Infans, an infant.	Sacerdos, a priest or
Civis, a citizen.	Interpres, an interpreter.	priest.
Cliens, a client.	Judex, a judge.	Sus, a swine.
Comes, a companion.	Martyr, a martyr.	Testis, a witness.
	Miles, a soldier.	Vates, a prophet.
	Municeps, a burges.	Vindex, an avenger.

But *antistes*, *cliens*, and *hospes*, also change their termination to express the feminine, thus, *antistita*, *clienta*, *hospita* : in the same manner with *leo*, a lion ; *leona*, a lioness ; *equus*, *equa* ; *mulus*, *mula* ; and many others.

There are several nouns, which, though applicable to both sexes, admit only of a masculine adjective; as, *advēna*, a stranger; *agricōla*, a husbandman; *affecta*, an attendant; *accōla*, a neighbour; *exul*, an exile; *latro*, a robber; *fur*, a thief; *opifex*, a mechanic, &c. There are others, which, though applied to persons, are on account of their termination, always neuter; as, *scortum*, a court-ezan; *mancipium*, *servitium*, a slave, &c.

In like manner, *operæ*, workmen; *vigilie*, *excubie*, watches; *noxæ*, guilty persons; though applied to men, are always feminine.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1. The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine; so *aquīla*, an eagle, is feminine, because nouns in *a* of the first declension are feminine. These are called *Epicene* or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *femīna*, as *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *femina passer*, a female sparrow.

OBS. 2. A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers and mountains, are masculine, because *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as, *hic Aprīlis*, April; *hic Aquīlo*, the north wind; *Afrīcus*, the south-west wind; *hic Tibēris*, the river Tiber; *hic Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, *hæc Matrōna*, the river Marne in France; *hæc Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily; *hoc Soraße*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra* or *regio*, *urbs*, *arbor* and *navis*, are feminine; as, *hæc Ægyptus*, Egypt; *Samos*, an island of that name; *Corinthus*, the city Corinth; *pomus*, an apple tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship: Thus also the names of poems, *hæc Ilias*, *Ædos*,

Gen. *ūrum* ; Dat. and

on.

Plural.	Terminations.
<i>peas</i> ;	<i>a, e,</i>
<i>um, of pens</i> ;	<i>e, arum,</i>
<i>to pens</i> ;	<i>e, is,</i>
<i>pens</i> ;	<i>am, as,</i>
<i>O pens</i> ;	<i>a, e,</i>
<i>with pens.</i>	<i>a, is.</i>

3.

are masculine ; *Hadrias*
met ; *planēta*, a planet ;
and *dama*, a fallow-deer.

sometimes formed the
aula, a hall, gen. *aulāi* :
which form the compounds
matres-familias, the mistresses of
dom. plur. *matres-familias*,

have more frequently
plural, to distinguish them
from the second declen-

and *Nata*, a daughter
liberta, a freed-woman.
asinus, a she-mule.

than *filiis*, &c.

UNS.

first declension, are Greek.
Line : nouns in *e* are femi-

penna ; only they have
Æneās, Æneas the name
e ; acc. *-am* or *-an* ; voc.
north wind ; *Tiāras*, *-e*,
commonly *am*, but in po-

and *Odyssēa*, the two poems of Homer ; hæc *Ænēis*, -*idos*, a poem of Virgil's ; hæc *Eunūchus*, one of Terence's comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination ; thus, hic *Pontus*, a country of that name ; hic *Sulmo*, -*ōnis* ; *Pessinus*, -*untis* ; *Hydrus*, -*untis* ; names of towns ; hæc *Perfis*, -*idis*, the kingdom of Persia ; *Carthāgo*, -*inis*, the city Carthage ; hoc *Albion*, Britain ; hoc *Cære*, *Reate*, *Præneste*, *Tibur*, *Ilium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine ; as, *Gelida Præneste*, Juv. *Ilion defensa*, Ovid.

The following names of trees are masculine, *oleaster*, -*tri*, a wild olive tree ; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine ; *cytisus*, a kind of shrub ; *rubus*, the bramble-bush ; *larix*, the larch-tree ; *lotus*, the lot-tree ; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two however are oftener masculine ; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter ; as, *buxum*, the bush, or box-tree ; *ligustrum*, a privet ; so likewise are *suber*, -*ëris*, the cork-tree ; *filer*, -*ëris*, the osier ; *robur*, -*ōris*, oak of the hardest kind ; *acer*, -*ëris*, the maple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter ; as, *Arbustum*, *quercetum*, *esculetum*, *salicetum*, *fruticetum*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c. grow ; Also the names of fruits and timber ; as, *pomum*, or *malum*, an apple ; *pirum*, a pear ; *ebenum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

Obs. 3. Several nouns are said to be of the *doubtful gender* ; that is, are sometimes found in one gender, and sometimes in another ; as, *dies*, a day, masculine or feminine ; *vulgus*, the rabble, masculine or neuter.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*.

Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the feminine gender.

The terminations of the different cases are ; Nom. and Voc. Sing. *a* ; Gen. and Dat. *e* diphthong ; Acc. *am* ;

Abl. *ā* : Nom. and Voc. Plur. *e* ; Gen. *ārum* ; Dat. and Abl. *is* ; Acc. *as* ; Thus,

Penna, a pen, fem.

Singular.	Plural.	Terminations.
N. penna, a pen ;	N pennæ, pens ;	a, e,
G. pennæ, of a pen ;	G. pennārum, of pens ;	e, arum,
D. pennæ, to a pen ;	D. pennis, to pens ;	e, is,
A. pennam, a pen ;	A. pennas, pens ;	am, as,
V. penna, O pen ;	V. pennæ, O pens ;	a, e,
A. pennā, with a pen ;	A. pennis, with pens.	a, is.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine ; *Hadrias* the Hadriatic sea ; *comēta*, a comet ; *planēta*, a planet ; and sometimes *talpa*, a mole ; and *dama*, a fallow-deer. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āi* ; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulāi* : and sometimes likewise in *as* ; which form the compounds of *familia* usually retain ; as, *mater-familias*, the mistress of a family ; gen. *matris-familias* ; nom. plur. *matres-familias*, or *matres-familiarum*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have more frequently *abus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us* of the second declension :

Anīma, the soul.

Dea, a goddess.

Equa, a mare.

Famula, a female servant.

Filia, & Nata, a daughter.

Liberta, a freed-woman.

Mula, a she-mule.

Thus, *deabus*, *filiabus*, rather than *filiis*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, of the first declension, are Greek. Nouns in *as* and *es* are masculine : nouns in *e* are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna* ; only they have *am* or *an* in the accusative ; as, *Ænēas*, Æneas the name of a man ; gen. *Ænēæ* ; dat. *-æ* ; acc. *-am* or *-an* ; voc. *-a* ; abl. *-ā*. So *Boreas*, *-eæ*, the north wind ; *Tiāras*, *-æ*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in po-

etry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry ; as *Ossa*, -*am*, or -*an*, the name of a mountain.

Nouns in *es* and *e* are thus declined,

Anchīfes, Anchises, the name of a man.

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i> Anchīfes,	<i>Acc.</i> Anchisen,
<i>Gen.</i> Anchisæ,	<i>Voc.</i> Anchise,
<i>Dat.</i> Anchisæ,	<i>Abl.</i> Anchise.

Penelōpe, Penelope, the name of a woman.

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i> Penelope,	<i>Acc.</i> Penelopen,
<i>Gen.</i> Penelopes,	<i>Voc.</i> Penelope,
<i>Dat.</i> Penelope,	<i>Abl.</i> Penelope.

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a* ; as, *Atrida*, for *Atrides* ; *Perfa* for *Perfes*, a Persian ; *Geometra*, for -*tres*, a Geometrician : *Circa* for *Circe* ; *Epitōma*, for -*me*, an abridgment ; *Grammatica*, for -*ce*, grammar ; *Rhetorica*, for -*ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinias*, &c. The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*.

Note. We sometimes find the genit. plur. contracted ; as, *Gælicolām*, for *Gælicolorum* ; *Æneādūm*, for -*arum*.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um* ; *os*, *on*.

Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter ; the rest are masculine.

Nouns of the second declension have the gen. sing. in *i* ; the dat. and abl. in *o* ; the acc. in *um* ; the voc. like the nom. (But nouns in *us* make the vocative in *e* :) The nom. and voc. plur. in *i*, or *a* ; the gen. in *orum* ; the dat. and abl. in *is* ; and the acc. in *os*, or *a* ; as,

Gener, a son-in-law, masc.

Sing.	Plur.	Terminations.
Nom. gener,	Nom. genēri,	er, ir, us, i,
Gen. genēri,	Gen. generōrum,	i, orum,
Dat. genero,	Dat. generis,	o, is,
Acc. generum,	Acc. generos,	um, os,
Voc. gener,	Voc. generi,	er, ir, e, i,
Abl. genero.	Abl. generis.	o, is.

After the same manner decline *focer*, -ēri, a father-in-law ; *puer*, -ēri, a boy ; So *Furcifer*, a villain ; *Lucifer*, the morning star ; *adulter*, an adulterer ; *armiger*, an armour bearer ; *presbyter*, an elder ; *Mulciber*, a name of the god Vulcan ; *vesper*, the evening ; and *Iber*, -ēri, a Spaniard, the only noun in *er*, which has the genit. long, and its compound *Celtiber*, -ēri : Also, *vir*, *viri*, a man, the only noun in *ir* ; and its compounds, *Levir*, a brother-in-law ; *Semivir*, *duumvir*, *triumvir*, &c. And likewise *Satur*, -ūri, full, (of old *saturus*,) an adjective.

But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive ; as,

Ager, a field, masc.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. ager,	Nom. agri,
Gen. agri,	Gen. agrōrum,
Dat. agro,	Dat. agris,
Acc. agrum,	Acc. agros,
Voc. ager,	Voc. agri,
Abl. agro.	Abl. agris.

In like manner, decline,

Aper, a wild boar.	Colūber, a serpent.	Magister, a master,
Arbiter, a judge.	Culter, the coulter of a	Minister, a servant.
Auster, the south wind.	plough, a knife.	Onāger, a wild ass.
Cancer, a crab-fish.	Faber, a workman.	Scalper, a lancet.
Caper, an he-goat.		

Also, *liber*, the bark of a tree, or a book, which has *libri* : but *liber*, free, an adjective, and *Liber*, a name of Bacchus, the God of wine, have *libēri*. So likewise proper names, *Alexander*, *Evander*, *Periander*, *Menander*, *Tenacer*, *Meleāger*, &c. gen. *Alexandri*, *Evandri*, &c.

Domīnus, a lord, masc.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. dominus,	Nom. domini,
Gen. domini,	Gen. dominōrum,
Dat. domino,	Dat. dominis,
Acc. dominum,	Acc. dominos,
Voc. domine,	Voc. domini,
Abl. domino.	Abl. dominis.

Regnum, a kingdom, neuter.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. regnum,	Nom. regna,
Gen. regni,	Gen. regnōrum,
Dat. regno,	Dat. regnis,
Acc. regnum,	Acc. regna,
Voc. regnum,	Voc. regna,
Abl. regno.	Abl. regnis.

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

Exc. I. The following nouns in *us* are feminine ; *humus*, the ground ; *alvus*, the belly ; *vannus*, a sieve.

And the following, derived from Greek nouns in *os* :

Abyssus, a bottomless pit.	Dialectus, a dialect, or manner of speech.	Methodus, a method.
Antidōtus, a preservative against poison.	Diametros, the diameter of a circle.	Periōdus, a period.
Arctos, one of the constellations.	Diphthongus, a diphthong.	Perimetros, the circumference.
Carbāsus, a sail.	Erēmus, a desert.	Pharus, a watch tower.
		Synōdus, an assembly.

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because *gemma* and *planta* are feminine ; as,

Amethystus, an amethyst.	Sappirus, a sapphire.	Byssus, fine flax or linen.
Chrysolithus, a chrysolite.	Topazius, a topaz.	
Chrysophrāsus, a kind of topaz.	Biblus, Papyrus,	{ an Egyptian reed of which paper was made.
Crystallus, a crystal.		
Leucochrysus, a jacinth.		

Other names of jewels are generally masculine ; as, *Beryllus*, the beryl ; *carbunculus*, a carbuncle ; *Pyrōpus*, a ruby ; *Smaragdus*, an emerald : And also names of plants ; as, *Asparāgus*, asparagus or sparrowgrass ; *ellebōrus*, ellobore ; *raphānus*, radish or colewort ; *intybus*, endive or succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow, are either masculine or feminine :

Atōmus, an atom.	Barbītus, a harp.	Grossus, a green fig.
Balānus, the fruit of the palm-tree.	Camēlus, a camel.	Penus, a store-house.
	Colus, a distaff.	Phasēlus, a little ship.

Exc. 3. *Virus*, poison ; *pelāgus*, the sea, are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative ; as, *Horatius*, *Horāti* ; *Virgilius*, *Virgili* ; *Georgius*, *Georgi*, names of men : *Larius*, *Lari* ; *Mincius*, *Minci*, names of lakes. *Filius*, a son, also hath *filī* ; *genius*, one's guardian angel, *geni* ; and *deus*, a god, hath *deus*, in the voc. and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *dūs*, than *dēi* and *dēis*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus* in the vocative.

Other nouns in *ius* have *e* ; as, *tabellarius*, *tabellarie*, a letter-carrier ; *pīus*, *pie*, &c. So these epithets, *Delius*, *Delie* ; *Tirynthius*, *Tirynthie* ; and these possessives, *Laertius*, *Laertie* ; *Saturnius*, *Saturnie*, &c. which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the voc. of nouns in *us* like the nom. as, *fluvius*, *Latinus*, for *fluvie*, *Latine*, Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely. Thus, *Audi tu populus*, for *popule*. Liv.

The poets also change nouns in *er* into *us* ; as, *Evander*, or *Evan-drus*, voc. *Evander*, or *Evandre* : So *Meander*, *Leander*, *Tymber*, *Teucer*, &c. and so anciently *puer* in the voc. had *puēre* from *puērus*.

Note. When the gen. sing. ends in *ii*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets, for the sake of quantity ; as *tugūri*, for *tugurii* ; *ingēni*, for *ingenii*, &c. And in the gen. plur. we find *dēum*, *libērūm*, *fabrūm*, *duūmvīrūm*, &c. for *deorum*, *liberorum*, &c. and in poetry, *Teucrūm*, *Graiūm*, *Argivūm*, *Danaūm*, *Pelaḡūm*, &c. for *Teuctrum*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Os and on are Greek terminations ; as, *Alphēos*, a river in Greece ; *Iliōn*, the city Troy ; and are often changed into *us* and *um* by the Latins ; as, *Alphēus*, *Ilium*, which are declined like *dominus* and *regnum*.

Nouns in *eos* or *ēus* are sometimes contracted in the genitive ; as, *Orphēus*, gen. *Orphēi*, *Orphēi* or *Orphēi*. So *Theēus*, *Promethēus*, &c. But nouns in *eus*, when the *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

Some nouns in *es* have the gen. sing. in *e*; as, *Androgeos*, gen. *Androgeo*, or *-ei*, the name of a man; *Atbos*, *Atbo*, or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both which are also found in the third decl. thus, nom. *Androgeo*, gen. *Androgeōnis*: So *Atbo* or *Atbon*, *-onis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *es*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the gen. in *u*; as, *Menandru*, *Apollodōru*, for *Menandri*, *Apollodori*. Ter.

Nouns in *es* have the acc. in *um* or *on*; as, *Delus* or *Delos* acc. *Delum* or *Delon*, the name of an island.

Some neuters have the gen. plur. in *ōn*; as, *Georgica*, gen. plur. *Georgiōn*, books which treat of husbandry, as Virgil's *Georgicks*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters are thirteen, *a, e, i, o, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*. Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i, o, y, c, d, l, t, x*; *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r*, with the second; and *s* with all the other declensions. *A, i, and y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

The terminations of the different cases are these; nom. sing. *a, e*, &c; gen. *is*; dat. *i*; acc. *em*; voc. *the same with the nominative*; abl. *e*, or *i*; nom. acc. and voc. plur. *es, a*, or *ia*; gen. *um*, or *ium*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; thus,

Sermo, speech, masc.	
Sing.	Plur.
N. sermo,	N. sermōnes,
G. sermōnis,	G. sermōnum,
D. sermoni,	D. sermonibus,
A. sermonem,	A. sermones,
V. sermo,	V. sermones,
A. sermone.	A. sermonibus.

Caput, the head, neut.	
Sing.	Plur.
N. caput,	N. capīta,
G. capītis,	G. capitum,
D. capiti,	D. capitibus,
A. caput,	A. capita,
V. caput,	V. capita,
A. capite.	A. capitibus.

Rupes, a rock, fem.	
Sing.	Plur.
N. rupes,	N. rupes,
G. rupis,	G. rupium,
D. rupi,	D. rupibus,
A. rupem,	A. rupes,
V. rupes,	V. rupes,
A. rupe.	A. rupibus.

Sedile, a seat, neut.	
Sing.	Plur.
N. sedile,	N. sedilia.
G. sedilia,	G. sedilium,
D. sedili,	D. sedilibus,
A. sedile,	A. sedilia,
V. sedile,	V. sedilia,
A. sedili.	A. sedilibus.

Lapis, a stone, masc.		Iter, a journey, neut.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
N. lapis,	N. lapides,	N. iter,	N. itinēra,
G. lapidis,	G. lapidum,	G. itinēris,	G. itinerum,
D. lapidi,	D. lapidibus,	D. itineri,	D. itinēribus,
A. lapidem,	A. lapides,	A. iter,	A. itinera,
V. lapis,	V. lapides,	V. iter,	V. itinera,
A. lapide.	A. lapidibus.	A. itinere.	A. itineribus.

Of the GENDER and GENITIVE of Nouns of the Third Declension.

A, E, I, and Y.

1. Nouns in *a, e, i, and y*, are neuter.

Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ātis*; as, *diadēma, diadēmātis*, a crown; *dogma, -ātis*, an opinion. So,

Ænigma, a riddle.	Apothegma, a short pithy saying.	Axiōma, a plain truth.
Arōma, sweet spices.	Sophisma, a deceitful argument.	Diplōma, a charter.
Epigramma, an in- scription.	Stemma, a pedigree.	Thēma, a theme, a subject to write or speak on.
Numisma, a coin.	Stigma, a mark or brand, a disgrace.	Toreuma, a carved vessel.
Phasma, an apparition.	Stratagēma, an artful contrivance.	
Poēma, a poem.		
Schema, a scheme or figure.		

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *rete, retis*, a net.

O.

2. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *ōnis*; as,

sermo, sermōnis, speech; *draco, dracōnis*, a dragon.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body; as, *ratio, rationis*, reason. But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine; as,

Curculio, the throat- pipe, the weasand.	Scorpio, a scorpion.	Vespertillo, a bat.
Papilio, a butterfly.	Septentrio, the north.	Ternio, the number three.
Pugio, a dagger.	Stellio, a lizard.	Quaternio, --- four.
Scipio, a staff.	Titio, a firebrand.	Senio, --- six.
	Unio, a pearl.	

Exc. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go* are feminine, and have the genitive in *inis* ; as, *arundo*, *arundinis*, a reed ; *imāgo*, *imāginis*, an image.

But the following are masculine :

Cardo, -inis, a hinge.
Cudo, -ōnis, a leather cap.
Harpāgo, -ōnis, a drag.
Ligo, -ōnis, a spade.

Margo, -inis, the brink of a rivet,
 also fem.
Ordo, -inis, order.
Tendo, -inis, a tendon.
Udo, -ōnis, a linen or woolen sock.

Cūpido, desire, is often masc. with the poets ; but in prose always feminine.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have *inis* :

Apollo, -inis, the god *Apollo*.
Homo, -inis, a man or woman.

Nemo, -inis, m. or f. no body.
Turbo, -inis, m. a whirlwind.

Caro, flesh, fem. has *carnis* ; *Anio*, masc. the name of a river, *Aniēnis* ; *Nerio*, *Neriēnis*, the wife of the god Mars ; from the obsolete nominatives *Aniēn*, *Neriēn*. *Turbo*, the name of a man, has *ōnis*.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *us* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular ; as, *Dido*, the name of a woman ; genit. *Didūs*, dat. *Didō*, &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly ; thus, *Dido*, *Didōnis* : so *echo*, -ūs, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood ; *Argo*, -ūs, the name of a ship ; *halo*, -onis, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

C, D, L.

3. Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is* ; as, *animal*, *animālis*, a living creature ; *halec*, *halēcis*, a kind of pickle. So,

Cervical, a bolster.
Cubital, a cushion.

Minerval, entry-money. *Puteal*, a well-cover.
Minūtal, minced meat. *Vectigal*, a tax.

Except. *Fel*, *fellis*, n. gall.

Sal, *sālis*, m. or n. salt.

Lac, *lactis*, n. milk.

Sāles, -ium, pl. m. witty sayings.

Mel, *mellis*, n. honey.

Sol, *sōlis*, m. the sun.

Mugil, *ilis*, m. a mullet-fish.

D is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is* ; as, *David*, *Davidis*.

N.

4. Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the negative.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *men* are neuter, and make their genitive in *inis* ; as *flumen*, *fluminis*, a river.

The following nouns are likewise neuter :

Gluten, -inis, <i>glue</i> .	Inguen, -inis, <i>the groin</i> .
Unguen, -inis, <i>ointment</i> .	Pollen, -inis, <i>fine flour</i> .

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *inis* ; *pellēs*, a comb ; *tubicen*, a trumpeter ; *tibicen*, a piper, and *oscen*, v. *oscinis*, sc. *avis*, f. a bird, which foreboded by singing.

Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine : *Sindon*, -ōnis, fine linen ; *āēdon*, -ōnis, a nightingale ; *Halcyon*, -ōnis, a bird called the King's fisher ; *icon*, -ōnis, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis* ; as, *Laomēdon*, -ontis, a king of Troy. So *Achēron*, *Chamēleon*, *Phaëthon*, *Charon*, &c.

AR and UR.

5. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive ; as,

calcar, *calcāris*, a spur ; *murmur*, *murmūris*, a noise.

Except. Ebur, -ōris, n. <i>ivory</i> .	Jecur, -ōris, or jecūōris, n. <i>the liver</i> .
Far, farris, n. <i>corn</i> .	
Femur, -ōris, n. <i>the thigh</i> .	Robur, -ōris, n. <i>strength</i> .
Furfur, -ūris, m. <i>bran</i> .	Salar, -aris, m. <i>a trout</i> .
Fur, fūris, m. <i>a thief</i> .	Turtur, -ūris, m. <i>a turtle-dove</i> .
Hepar, -ātis, or -ātoe, n. <i>the liver</i> .	Vultur, -ūris, m. <i>a vulture</i> .

ER and OR.

6. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is* ; as,

anser, *ansēris*, a goose ; *agger*, -ēris, a rampart ; *aer*, -ēris, the air ; *carcer*, -ēris, a prison ; *asser*, -ēris, a plank ; *dolor*, -ōris, pain ; *color*, -ōris, a colour.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter :

Ador, -oris, <i>fine wheat</i> .	Papāver, -ēris, <i>poppy</i> .
Æquor, -ōris, <i>a plain, the sea</i> .	Piper, -ēris, <i>pepper</i> .
Cadāver, -ēris, <i>a dead carcase</i> .	Spinther, -ēris, <i>a clasp</i> .

or *Achilli*, contracted for *Achillēi* or *Achillei*, of the second decl. from *Achillēus*: So *Ulysses*, *Pericles*, *Verres*, *Aristotēles*, &c.

IS.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative; as, *auris*, *auris*, the ear; *avis*, *avis*, a bird.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

<i>Axis</i> , axis, an axle-tree.	<i>Ensis</i> , a sword.	<i>Patruelis</i> , a cousin-german.
<i>Aquālis</i> , a water-pot.	<i>Fascis</i> , a bundle.	
an ewer.	<i>Fecialis</i> , a herald.	<i>Piscis</i> , a fish.
<i>Callis</i> , a beaten road.	<i>Follis</i> , a pair of bellows.	<i>Postis</i> , a post.
<i>Caulis</i> , the stalk of an herb.	<i>Fustis</i> , a staff.	<i>Sodālis</i> , a companion.
	<i>Mensis</i> , a month.	<i>Torris</i> , a fire-brand.
<i>Collis</i> , a hill.	<i>Mugilis</i> , or -il, a mullet.	<i>Unguis</i> , the nail.
<i>Cenchris</i> , a kind of serpent.	let-fish.	[world. <i>Vectis</i> , a lever.
	<i>Orbis</i> , a circle, the	<i>Vermis</i> , a worm.

To these add Latin nouns in *nis*; as, *panis*, bread; *crinis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire; *funis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *īdis*; as, *tyrannis*, *tyrannīdis*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently:

<i>Cinis</i> , <i>ēris</i> , ashes.	<i>Pubis</i> or <i>pubes</i> , -is, or oftener - <i>ēris</i> , marriageable.
<i>Cucūmis</i> , -is, or - <i>ēris</i> , a cucumber.	
<i>Dis</i> , <i>dītis</i> , the god of riches, or rich, an adj.	<i>Pulvis</i> , - <i>ēris</i> , dust.
<i>Glis</i> , <i>glīris</i> , a rat.	<i>Quiris</i> , - <i>ītis</i> , a Roman.
<i>Impubis</i> , or <i>impubes</i> , -is, or <i>ēris</i> , not marriageable.	<i>Samnis</i> , - <i>ītis</i> , a Samnite.
<i>Lapis</i> , - <i>īdis</i> , a stone.	<i>Sanguis</i> , - <i>īnis</i> , blood.
	<i>Semis</i> , <i>īsis</i> , the half of any thing.
	<i>Vomis</i> , or -er, - <i>ēris</i> , a ploughshare.

Samnis and *Quiris*, *pubis* and *impubis*, from the nature of their signification, may also be feminine, being properly adjectives. *Pulvis* and *cinis* are likewise sometimes feminine. *Semis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Exsanguis*, bloodless, an adj. has *exsanguis* in the gen.

Exc. 3. The following are either masc. or femin. and form the genitive according to the general rule ;

Amnis, <i>a river.</i>	Finis, <i>the end : fines, Scrobis, or scrobs, a</i>
Anguis, <i>a snake.</i>	<i>the boundaries of a ditch.</i>
Canālis, <i>a conduit-pipe.</i>	<i>field or territories, Torquis, a chain.</i>
Clunis, <i>the buttock.</i>	<i>is always masc.</i>
Corbis, <i>a basket.</i>	

Exc. 4. These feminines have *idis* : *Cassus, -idis*, a helmet ; *cuspis, -idis*, the point of a spear ; *capis, -idis*, a kind of cup ; *promulsis, -idis*, a kind of drink, metheglin. *Lis*, strife, f. has *litis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously : Some have *eos* or *ios* ; as, *hæresis, -eos*, or *-ios*, or *-is*, a heresy ; *basis, -is*, f. the foot of a pillar ; *phrasis, a phrase* ; *phthisis, a consumption* ; *poësis, poetry* ; *metropōlis, a chief city, &c.* Some have *idis*, or *idos* ; as, *Paris, -idis*, or *idos*, the name of a man ; *aspis, -idis*, f. an asp ; *ephemeris, -idis*, f. a day-book ; *Iris, -idis*, f. the rainbow ; *pyxis, -idis*, f. a box. So *Ægis*, the shield of Pallas ; *canthāris, a sort of fly* ; *periscēlis, a garter* ; *proboscis, an elephant's trunk* ; *pyramis, a pyramid* ; and *tigris, a tiger, -idis*, seldom *tigris* : all fem. Part have *idis* ; as, *Psophis, -idis*, the name of a city : others have *inis* ; as, *Eleusis, -inis*, the name of a city : and some have *entis* ; as, *Simois, Simoentis*, the name of a river. *Charis*, one of the graces, has *Gharitis*.

OS.

10. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis* ; as, *nepos, -ōtis*, a grand child ; *sacerdos, -ōtis*, a priest.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine :

Arbos, <i>or -or, -ōris, a tree.</i>	Eos, <i>cōis, the morning.</i>
Cos, <i>cōtis, a ruby-stone.</i>	Glos, <i>glōris, the husband's sister, or</i>
Dos, <i>dōtis, a dowry.</i>	<i>brother's wife.</i>

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive :

Flos, <i>flōris, a flower.</i>	Lepos, <i>or -or, -ōris, wit.</i>
Honos, <i>or -or, -ōris, honour.</i>	Mos, <i>mōris, a custom.</i>
Labos, <i>or -or, -ōris, labour.</i>	Ros, <i>rōris, dew.</i>

Custos, -ōdis, a keeper ; also fem. Tros, Trōis, a Trojan.

Heros, herōis, a hero.

Eos, bōvis, m. or f. an ox or cow.

Minos, -ōis, a king of Crete.

Exc. 3. Os, ossis, a bone ; and ōs, oris, the mouth, neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have ōis ; as, heros, -ōis, a hero, or great man : So, Minos, a king of Crete ; Tros, a Trojan ; thos, a kind of wolf.

US.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ōris* ; as
pectus, pectōris, the breast ; *tempus, temporis*, time.

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ēris*.

Acus, *chaff*.

Munus, a gift, or office. Scelus, a crime.

Funus, a funeral.

Olus, pot-herbs.

Sidus, a star.

Fœdus, a covenant.

Onus, a burden.

Vellus, a fleece of wool.

Genus, a kind, or kindred.

Opus, a work.

Viscus, an entrail.

Glomus, a clow.

Pondus, a weight.

Ulcus, a bite.

Latus, the side.

Rudus, rubbish.

Vulnus, a wound.

Thus, *acēris, funēris*, &c. *Glomus*, a clow, is sometimes masculine, and has *glomi*, of the second declension. *Venus*, the goddess of love, and *vetus*, old, an adjective, likewise have *ēris*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously :

Incus, -ūdis, an anvil.

Salus, -ūtis, safety.

Palus, -ūdis, a pool or morass.

Senectus, -ūtis, old age.

Pecus, (not used) -ūdis, a sheep.

Servitus, -ūtis, slavery.

Subscus, -ūdis, a dove-tail.

Virtus, -ūtis, virtue.

Tellus, -ūris, the earth.

Intercus, -ūtis, an hydropsy.

Juventus, -ūtis, youth.

Intercus is properly an adjective, having *aqua* understood.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *ūris*, in the genitive ; as,

Crus, crūris, the leg.

Rus, rūris, the country.

Jus, jūris, law or right : also broth.

Thus, thūris, frankincense.

Pus, pūris, the corrupt matter of any fore.

So Mus, mūris, masc. a mouse.

Ligus, or -ur, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris* ; *lepus*, masc. a hare, *lepōris* ; *sus*, masc. or fem. a swine, *suis* ; *grus*, masc. or fem. a crane, *gruis*.

Œdîpus, the name of a man, has *Œdîpōdis*: sometimes it is of the second declension, and has *Œdîpi*. The compounds of *pus*, have *ōdis*: as, *tripūs*; masc. a tripod, *tripōdis*; but *lagōpus*, -*ōdis*, a kind of bird, or the herb hares-foot, is fem. Names of cities have *untis*; as, *Trapezus*, *Trapezuntis*; *Opus*, *Opuntis*.

TS.

12. Nouns in *ys* are all derived from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive, they have sometimes *ys*, or *yos*; as *hæc cbelys*, *cbelyis*, or -*yos*, a harp; *Capyis*, *Capyis*, or *yos*, the name of a man: sometimes they have *ŷdis*, or *ŷdos*, as, *hæc cblamys*, *cblamŷdis*, or *cblamŷdos*, a soldier's cloak; and sometimes *ŷnis*, or *ŷnos*; as *Trachys*, *Trachŷnis*, or *Trachŷnos*, the name of a town.

ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in *æs* and *aus* are,

Æs, *æris*, n. *brasi* or *money*.

Laus, *laudis*, f. *praise*.

Fraus, *fraudis*, f. *fraud*.

Præs, *prædis*, m. or f. *a surety*.

Substantives ending in the syllable *eus* are all proper names, and have the genitive in *eos*; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*; *Tereus*, *Tereos*. But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eus* is divided into two syllables; thus, *Orphēus*, genit. *Orphēi*, or sometimes contracted *Orphēi*, and that into *Orphēi*.

S with a consonant before it.

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant before it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis*; as, *trabs*, *trābis*, a beam; *scobs*, *scōbis*, saw-dust; *hiems*, *hiēmis*, winter; *gens*, *gentis*, a nation; *stips*, *slīpis*, alms; *pars*, *partis*, a part; *fors*, *fortis*, a lot; *mors*, -*tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine:

Chalys, -*ŷbis*, *steel*.

Merops, -*ōpis*, a *wood-pecker*.

Dens, -*tis*, a *tooth*.

Mons, -*tis*, a *mountain*.

Fons, -*tis*, a *well*.

Pons, -*tis*, a *bridge*.

Gryps, *gryphis*, a *griffon*.

Seps, *sēpis*, a *kind of serpent*; but,

Hydrops, -*ōpis*, the *dropsy*.

Seps, *scpis*, a *bedge*, is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masc. or feminine:

Adeps, *adīpis*, *fatness*.

Serpens, -*tis*, a *serpent*.

Rudens, -*tis*, a *cable*.

Stirps, *stirpis*, the *root of a tree*.

Scrobs, *scrōbis*, a *ditch*.

Stirps, an *offspring*, always fem.

Animans, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3. Polysyllables in *e*ps change *e* into *i*; as, *hæc forceps*, *forçipis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps*, *-ijis*, a prince, or princess; *particeps*, *-cipis*, a partaker; so likewise *cælebs*, *calibis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *caput* have *cipitis*; as, *præceps*, *præcipitis*, headlong; *anceps*, *ancipitis*, doubtful; *biceps*, *-cipitis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucūpis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis*:

<i>Frons</i> , <i>frondis</i> , the leaf of a tree.	<i>Juglans</i> , <i>-dis</i> , a walnut.
<i>Glans</i> , <i>glandis</i> , an acorn.	<i>Lens</i> , <i>lendis</i> , a nit.

So, *libripens*, *libripendis*, a weigher; *nefrens*, *-dis*, a grice or pig; and the compounds of *sor*: as, *concor*, *concordis*, agreeing; *discor*, disagreeing; *vecor*, mad, &c. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens*, going; and *quiens*, being able, participles from the verbs *eo* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*: thus, *iens*, *euntis*; *quiens*, *queuntis*; *rediens*, *redeuntis*; *nequiens*, *nequiuntis*: but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6. *Tiryns*, a city in Greece, the birth-place of Hercules, has *Tirynthis*.

T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *caput*, *capitis*, the head, neuter. In like manner, its compounds, *frons*, *frontis*, the forehead; and *occiput*, *-itis*, the hind-head.

X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as,

Vox, *vōcis*, the voice; *lux*, *lūcis*, light.

Exc. 1. Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thorax*, *-ācis*, a breast-plate; *Corax*, *-ācis*, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *icis*; as, *pollux*, *-icis*, the thumb.

Vervex, a wedder sheep, has *vervēcis*; *fanixen*, a mower of hay, *fanisēcis*; *Rŕsen*, m. *-ēcis*, a vine branch cut off.

To these masculines add,

Calix, -īcis, <i>a cup.</i>	Oryx, -ŷcis, <i>a wild-goat.</i>
Calyx, -ŷcis, <i>the bud of a flower.</i>	Phoenix, -īcis, <i>a bird so called.</i>
Coccyx, -ŷgis, <i>vel. ŷcis, a cuckoo.</i>	Tradux, -ūcis, <i>a graff, or off-set of a vine; also fem.</i>
Fornix, -īcis, <i>a vault.</i>	

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine.

Fornax, -ācis, <i>a furnace.</i>	Forrex, -īcis, <i>a pair of scissors.</i>
Panax, -ācis, <i>the herb all-heal.</i>	Halex, -ēcis, <i>a herring.</i>
Smilax, -ācis, <i>the herb rope-weed.</i>	Supellex, supellectilis, <i>household furniture.</i>
Carex, -īcis, <i>a sedge.</i>	
Climax, ācis, <i>a ladder.</i>	

Exc. 2. A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine; as,

Calx, -cis, <i>the beel, or the end of any thing, the gaol; but calx, lime, is always fem.</i>	Limax, -ācis, <i>a snail.</i>
Cortex, -īcis, <i>the bark of a tree.</i>	Obex, -īcis, <i>a bolt or bar.</i>
Hystrix, -īcis, <i>a porcupine.</i>	Perdix, -īcis, <i>a partridge.</i>
Imbrex, -īcis, <i>a gutter or roof tile.</i>	Pumex, -ŷcis, <i>a pumice-stone.</i>
Lynx, -cis, <i>an ounce, a beast of a very quick sight.</i>	Rumex, -īcis, <i>forrel, an herb.</i>
	Sandix, -īcis, <i>a purple colour.</i>
	Silex, -īcis, <i>a flint.</i>
	Varix, -īcis, <i>a fetter vein.</i>

Exc. 3. The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive:

Aquilex, -ēgis, <i>a well-maker.</i>	Phalanx, -angis, <i>f. a phalanx.</i>
Conjux, or ux, -ūgis, <i>a husband or wife.</i>	Remex, -īgis, <i>a rower,</i>
Fruix, (<i>not used</i>) frūgis, <i>f. corn.</i>	Rex, rēgis, <i>a king.</i>
Grexx, grēgis, <i>m. or f. a flock.</i>	Nix, nīvis, <i>f. snow.</i>
Lex, lēgis, <i>f. a law.</i>	Nox, noctis, <i>f. night.</i>
	Senex, sēnis, (<i>an adj.</i>) <i>old.</i>

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *x*, both with respect to gender and declension, are as various as Latin nouns: thus, *bombyx*, *bombycis*, a silk worm, masc. but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine; *onyx*, masc. or fem. *onychis*, a precious stone; and to *sardonix*; *larynx*, *laryngis*, fem. the top of the wind-pipe; *Phryx*, *Phrygis*, a Phrygian; *sphinx*, -ngis, a fabulous hag; *strix*, -īgis, *f. a screechowl*; *Styx*, -ŷgis, *f. a river in hell*; *Hylax*, -āis, the name of a dog; *Bibran*, *Bibrañis*, the name of a town, &c.

DATIVE SINGULAR.

The Dative singular anciently ended also in *e*; as, *Esuriēte leoni ex ore exculpere pradam*, To pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion, Lucil. *Heret pede pes*, Foot sticks to foot, Virg. for *esurienti* and *pedi*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. The following nouns have the accusative in *im* :

<i>Amuffis</i> , f. a mason's rule.	<i>Ravis</i> , f. boarsenest.
<i>Buris</i> , f. the beam of a plough.	<i>Sināpis</i> , f. mustard.
<i>Cannābis</i> , f. hemp.	<i>Sitis</i> , f. thirst.
<i>Cucūmis</i> , m. a cucumber.	<i>Tuffis</i> , f. the cough.
<i>Gummis</i> , f. gum.	<i>Vis</i> , f. strengtb.
<i>Mephitis</i> , f. a damp or strong smell.	

To these add names of rivers, and some other proper names; as, *Tibēris*, *Tibērim*, the Tiber; *Syrtis*, f. -im, a quicksand. These sometimes make the accusative in *in*; as, *Batin*, *Serāpin*, &c.

Exc. 2. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im*; as,

<i>Clavis</i> , f. a key.	<i>Pelvis</i> , f. a basin.	<i>Secūris</i> , f. an ax.
<i>Cutis</i> , f. the skin.	<i>Puppis</i> , f. the stern of a ship.	<i>Sementis</i> , f. a sowing.
<i>Febris</i> , f. a fever.	<i>Reſtis</i> , f. a rope.	<i>Strigilis</i> , f. a horse-comb.
<i>Navis</i> , f. a ship.		<i>Turris</i> , f. a tower, &c.

Thus *navem*, or *navim*; *puppem*, or *puppim*, &c. The ancients said *avim*, *aurim*, *ovim*, *pestim*, *vallim*, *vitim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

Exc. 3. GREEK NOUNS form their accusative variously :

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a*; as, *lampas*, *lampadis*, or *lampades*; *lampadem*, or *lampadu*. In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it: *Tros*, *Trōis*, *Troem*, and *Troa*, a Trojan; *heros*, a hero; *Minos*, a king of Crete. The three following have only *a*: *Pan*, the god of shepherds; *æther*, the sky; *delpbin*, a dolphin; thus, *Pāna*, *æthēra*, *delpbīna*.

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *os* impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in*, sometimes in *idem*, never *ida*; as, *Paris*, *Paridis*, or *Paridos*; *Parim*, or *Parin*, sometimes *Paridem*, never *Parīda*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *idem* or *īda*, but rarely *im* or *in*; as, *Elis*, *Elidis* or *Elidos*, *Elidem* or *Elīda*; seldom *Elim* or *Elin*; a city in Greece. In like

manner, feminines in *ys*, *ȳdos*, have *ȳdem*, or *ȳda*, not *ȳm* or *ȳn* in the accusative; as, *chlamys*, -*ȳdem*, or *ȳda*, not *chlamyn*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *es* pure in the genitive, form the accusative by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *metamorphōsis*, -*cos*, or -*ios*, *metamorphosim* or -*in*, a change: *Tetbys*, -*ȳos*, or -*ȳis*; *Tetbym*, or -*ȳn*; the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus*, have the accusative in *ea*; as, *Thescus*, *Thesca*.

ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar* have *i* in the ablative; as, *sedile*, *sedili*; *animal*, *animāi*; *caicar*, *calcāri*. Except proper names; as, *Præneste*, abl. *Præneste*, the name of a town; and the following neuters in *ar*:

Far, farre, corn.

Nectar, -*āre*, drink of the gods.

Hepar, -*āte*, the liver.

Par, pāre, a match, a pair.

Jubar, -*āre*, a sun-beam.

Sal, sāle, salt.

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*; but *cannābis*, *Bastis*, and *tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris*, *turre*, or *turri*; but *restis*, a rope; and *cutis*, the skin, have *e* only.

Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *finis*, *supellex*, *vestis*, *pugil*, a champion; *mugil* or *mugilis*; *rus*, *occiput*: Also names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi*; as, *habitat Carthagine* or *Carthagini*, he lives at Carthage. So, *civis*, *classis*, *fers*, *imber*, *anguis*, *avis*, *postis*, *fussis*, *amnis*, and *ignis*; but these have oftener *e*. *Canalis* has only *i*. The most ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i*; as, *estati*, *cani*, *lapidi*, *ovi*, &c.

Exc. 3. Adjectives used as substantives have commonly the same ablative with the adjectives; as, *bipennis*, -*i*, an halbert; *molāris*, -*i*, a millstone; *quadriremis*, -*i*, a ship with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprīlis*, -*i*; *December*, -*bri*, &c. But *rudis*, a rod given gladiators when discharged; *juvēnis*, a young man, have only *e*; and likewise those ending in *il*, *x*, *ceps*, or *ns*; as,

Adolescens, a young man.

Princeps, a prince.
Senex, an old man.

Torrens, a brook.
Vigil, a watchman.

Infans, an infant.

Thus, *adolescente*, *infante*, *sene*, &c.

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye*, or *y*; as, *Atys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*, the name of a man.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either masculine or feminine; as, *sermones*, *rupes*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *eis* or *is*; as, *puppes*, *puppeis*, or *puppis*.

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia*; as, *capita*, *sedilia*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make the genitive plural in *ium*; but if the ablative be in *e*, the genitive plural has *um*; as, *sedile*, *sedili*, *sedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*; *caput*, *capite*, *capitum*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e*; as, *mas*, a male, *māre*, *marium*; *vas*, a surety, *vādium*; but polysyllables have rather *um*; as, *civitas*, a state or city, *civitātum*, and sometimes *civitatium*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium*; as, *hostis*, an enemy, *hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants; as, *gens*, a nation, *gentium*; *urbs*, a city, *urbium*.

But the following have *um*: *parens*, *vates*, *panis*, *juvēnis*, and *canis*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the genitive plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular:

Caro, carnis, f. *flesh*.
 Cohors, -tis, f. *a company*.
 Cor, cordis, n. *the heart*.
 Cos, cotis, f. *a bone or whetstone*.
 Dos, dōtis, f. *a dowry*.
 Faux, faucis, f. *the jaws*.
 Glis, gliris, m. *a rat*.
 Lar, laris, m. *a household-god*.
 Linter, -tris, m. or f. *a little boat*.

Lis, litis, f. *strife*.
 Mus, mūris, m. *a mouse*.
 Nix, nivis, f. *snow*.
 Nox, noctis, f. *the night*.
 Os, ossis, n. *a bone*.
 Quiris, -itis, a *Roman*.
 Samnis, -itis, m. or f. *a Samnite*.
 Uter, utris, m. *a bottle*.

Thus *Samnitium*, *lintrium*, *litium*, &c. Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as*; as, *septunx*, seven ounces, *septuncium*; *bes*, eight ounces, *besium*. *Bos*, an ox or cow, has *boum*, and in the dative, *būbus*, or *būbus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *Macēdo*, a Macedonian; *Arabs*, an Arabian; *Æthiops*, an Ethiopian; *Monocēros*, an unicorn; *Lynx*, a beast so called; *Thrax*, a Thracian: *Macedōnum*, *Arābum*, *Æthiōpum*, *Monocerōtum*, *Lyncum*, *Thracum*. But those which have *a* or *is* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the genitive plural in *ōn*; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammātum*, or *epigrammatōn*, an epigram; *metamorphosis*, *-ium*, or *-cōn*.

Obs. 1. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus, *manes*, m. souls departed, *manium*; *calites*, m. inhabitants of heaven, *calitum*; because they would have had in the sing. *manis* and *celes*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Saturnalia*, the feast of Saturn, *Saturnaliūm*, and *Saturnaliorum*.

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *um*; as, *nocentūm* for *nocentium*: and sometimes to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; as, *calitūm* for *calitum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncōpe*; and the latter by *Epenthēsis*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *is* instead of *tibus*; as, *poēma*, poem, *poēmātis*, rather than *poematibus*, from the old nominative *poemātum*.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *is*, or when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin*; as, *Troāsi* or *Troāsin*, for *Troādibus*, from *Troas*, *Troādis*, a Trojan woman.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is*; as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accusative plural also ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampādem*, or *lampāda*; *lampādes* or *lampādas*. So *Tros*, *Troas*; *heros*, *heroas*; *Æthiops*, *Æthiopas*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS THROUGH ALL THE CASES.

Lampas, f. *lampādis*, or *-ādor*; *-ādi*, *-ādem*, or *ada*; *-as*; *-ade*:
Plural *-ades*; *-ādum*; *-adibus*; *-ades*, or *-adas*; *-ades*; *-adibus*.

Troas, f. *Troadis*, or *-ados*; *-i*; *em* or *a*; *as*; *e*: Plur. *Troades*; *-um*; *-ibus*, *fi*, or *fm*; *es* or *as*; *es*; *ibus*.

Tros, m. *Trois*; *Troi*; *Troem* or *-a*; *Tros*; *Troe*, &c.

Phillis, f. *Phillidis* or *-dos*, *dī*, *dem* or *dā*; *i*; *de*.

Paris, m. *Paridis* or *-dos*; *dī*; *dem*, *Parim* or *im*; *i*; *de*.

Cblamys, f. *Cblamydis* or *-ydos*, *ydi*, *ydem* or *yda*, *ys*, *yde*, &c.

Capys, m. *Capys*, or *-gos*; *yi*; *ym* or *yn*; *y*; *ye* or *y*.

Metamorphosis, f. *-is* or *-eos*, *i*, *em* or *in*, *i*, *i*, &c.

Orpheus, m. *eos*, *ei* or *ei*, *ea*, *eu*, abl. *eo* of the second decl.

Dido, f. *Didūs* or *Didōnis*, *Dido* or *Didoni*, &c.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.

Nouns in *us* are masculine: nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

The terminations of the cases are; nom. sing. *us*; gen. *ūs*; dat. *ui*; acc. *um*; voc. *like the nom.*; nom. acc. voc. plur. *us* or *ua*; gen. *uum*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; as,

Fructus, fruit, masc.		Cornu, a horn, neut.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
N. fructus,	N. fructus,	N. cornu,	N. cornua,
G. fructūs,	G. fructuum,	G. cornu,	G. cornuum,
D. fructui,	D. fructibus,	D. cornu,	D. cornibus,
A. fructum,	A. fructus,	A. cornu,	A. cornua,
V. fructus,	V. fructus,	V. cornu,	V. cornua,
A. fructu.	A. fructibus.	A. cornu.	A. cornibus.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine:

Acus, a needle.

Manus, the hand.

Specus, a den.

Domus, a house.

Penus, a storehouse.

Tribus, a tribe.

Ficus, a fig.

Porticus, a gallery.

Penus and *specus* are sometimes masc. *Ficus*, *Penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, m. the sign of Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second decl. and so are the compounds of *manus*; *unimānus*; *centimānus*, &c. *Domus* is but partly of the second; thus,

Domus, a house, fem.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. domus,	Nom. domus,
Gen. domūs, or -mi,	Gen. domorum, or -uum,
Dat. domui, or -mo,	Dat. domibus,
Acc. domum,	Acc. domos, or -us,
Voc. domus,	Voc. domus,
Abl. domo.	Abl. domibus.

Note. *Domus*, in the genit. signifies, of a house; and *domi*, at home, or of home; as, *memineris domi*. Ter.

Exc. 2. The following have *ibus* in the dative and ablative plural.

Acus, a needle.
Arcus, a bow.
Artus, a joint.
Genu, the knee.

Lacus, a lake.
Partus, a birth.
Portus, a harbour.

Specus, a den.
Tribus, a tribe.
Veru, a spit.

Portus, *genu*, and *veru*, have likewise *ibus*; as, *portibus* or *portibus*.

Exc. 3. *Iesus*, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.

Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*, a crane; thus, *fructus*, *fructus*, *fructui*, *fructuem*, *fructue*; *fructues*, *fructuum*, *fructuibus*, *fructues*, *fructues*, *fructuibus*. So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis*, and in others, the dative in *u*. The gen. plur. is sometimes contracted; as, *currum* for *curruum*.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender; as,

	Res, a thing, fem.		Terminations.
Sing.	Plur.		
<i>Nom. res,</i>	<i>Nom. res,</i>	<i>ēs,</i>	<i>es,</i>
<i>Gen. rei,</i>	<i>Gen. rerum,</i>	<i>ei,</i>	<i>erum,</i>
<i>Dat. rei,</i>	<i>Dat. rebus,</i>	<i>ei,</i>	<i>ebus,</i>
<i>Acc. rem,</i>	<i>Acc. res,</i>	<i>em,</i>	<i>es,</i>
<i>Voc. res,</i>	<i>Voc. res,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>es,</i>
<i>Abl. re.</i>	<i>Abl. rebus.</i>	<i>e,</i>	<i>ebus.</i>

In like manner decline,

<i>Acies</i> , the edge of a thing, or an army in order of battle.	<i>Ingluvies</i> , gluttony.	<i>Scabies</i> , the scab, or itch.
<i>Carices</i> , rottenness.	<i>Macies</i> , leanness.	<i>Series</i> , an order.
<i>Facies</i> , the face.	<i>Pernicies</i> , destruction.	<i>Species</i> , an appearance.
<i>Glacies</i> , ice.	<i>Proluvies</i> , a loosening.	<i>Superficies</i> , the surface.
	<i>Rabies</i> , madness.	<i>Temperies</i> , temperateness.
	<i>Sanies</i> , gore.	

Except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *meridies*, the mid-day, or noon, masc.

D

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, in *e*.

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three, *fides*, faith; *spes*, hope; *res*, a thing; and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four, *abies*, a fir tree; *aries*, a ram; *paries*, a wall; and *quies*, rest; which are of the third declension.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable, either in gender, or declension, or in both.

I. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes:

1. Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural:

<i>Avernus</i> , a lake in Campania, bell.	<i>Mænälus</i> , a hill in Arcadia.
<i>Dindymus</i> , a hill in Phrygia.	<i>Pangæus</i> , a promontory in Thrace.
<i>Imärus</i> , a hill in Thrace.	<i>Tænärus</i> , a promontory in Laconia.
<i>Mafsicus</i> , a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines.	<i>Tartärus</i> , hell.
	<i>Täygëtus</i> , a hill in Laconia.

Thus, *Averna*, *Avernorum*; *Dindyma*, -orum, &c. These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *juga* or *cacumina* in the plural.

2. Masc. in the sing. and in the plur. masc. and neuter:

Jocus, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca*; *locus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*.

When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural:

Carbäsus, a sail, pl. *carbäsa*; *Pergämus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergama*.

4. Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural:

Cælum, pl. *cæli*, heaven; *Elysium*, pl. *Elysiä*, the Elysian fields; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the sing. in the plur. masc. or neuter :*

Rastrum, a rake, pl. *rastri* and *rastra* ; *frenum*, a bridle, pl. *freni* and *fræna*.

6. *Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural :*

Delicium, a delight, pl. *deliciæ* ; *Epulum*, a banquet, pl. *epulæ* ; *Balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ* and *balnea*.

II. Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclitæ* ; as, *vas*, *vās*, a vessel, pl. *vasa*, *vasorum* ; *jugerum*, *jugeri*, an acre, pl. *jugera*, *jugerum*, *jugeribus*, which has likewise sometimes *jugēris* and *jugēre* in the singular, from the obsolete *jugus* or *juger*.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective, either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.

1. Some are altogether indeclinable ; as, *pondo*, a pound or pounds ; *fas*, right ; *nefas*, wrong ; *sināpi*, mustard ; *mane*, the morning ; as, *clarum mane*, Perf. *A mane ad vesperam*, Plaut. *Multo mane*, &c. ; *cepe*, an onion ; *gausāpe*, a rough coat, &c. ; all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun ; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination. Perf. *Istud cras*, for *iste crassinus dies*, that to-morrow. Mart. *O magnum Grecorum*, the *Omēga*, or the large O of the Greeks ; *Infidus est compositum ex in et fidus* ; *infidus* is compounded of *in* and *fidus*. To these add foreign or barbarous names ; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin ; as, *Joh*, *Elisabet*, *Jerusalem*, &c.

2. Some are used only in one case, and therefore called *monoptōta* ; as, *inquies*, want of rest, in the nominative singular ; *dicis* and *nauci*, in the genit. sing. ; thus, *dicis gratia*, for form's sake ; *res nauci*, a thing of no value ; *inficias* and *incita* or *incitas*, in the accusative plural : thus, *ire inficias*, to deny ; *ad incitas redactus*, reduced to a strait, or non-plus ; *ingratiis*, in the abl. plur. in spite of one ; and these ablatives singular, *noctu*, in the night time ; *diu*, *interdiu*, in the day-time ; *promptu*, in readiness ; *natu*, by birth ; *injussu*, without command or leave ; *ergō*, for the sake, as, *ergo illius*, Virg. *Ambāge*, f. with a winding or a tedious story ; *Compēde*, m. with a fetter ; *Casse*, m.

with a net ; *vepres*, m. a briar : Plur. *Ambages*, -ibus ; *sompedes*, -ibus ; *cafles*, -ium ; *vepres*, -ium, &c.

3. Some are uſed in two caſes only, and therefore called *diptōta* ; as, *neceſſe* or -um, neceſſity ; *volūpe* or *volup*, pleaſure ; *inſtar*, likenels, bignels ; *aſtu*, a town ; *hir*, the palm of the hand ; in the nom. and acc. ſing. ; *veſper*, m. abl. *veſpere* or *veſperi*, the evening ; *ſiremps*, the ſame, all alike, abl. *ſirempſe* ; *ſpontis*, f. in the genitive, and *ſponte* in the ablative, of its own accord ; ſo *impētis*, m. and *impēte*, force ; *verbēris*, n. genit. and *verbēre*, abl. a ſtripe ; in the plural entire ; *verbēra*, *verberum*, *verberibus*, &c. *repetundarum*, abl. *repetundis*, ſc. *pecuniis*, money unjuſtly taken in the time of one's office, extortion ; *ſuppetia*, nom. pl. *ſuppetias* in the acc. help ; *inferia*, *inferias*, ſacrifices to the dead.

4. Several nouns are only uſed in three caſes, and therefore called *triptōta* ; as, *prēci*, *precem*, *prece*, f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not uſed ; in the plural it is entire, *preces*, *precum*, *precibus*, &c. *Femīnis*, gen. from the obſolete *femen*, the thigh ; in the dat. and abl. ſing. ; in the nom. acc. and voc. plur. *femina*. *Dica*, a proceſs, acc. ſing. *dicam*, plur. *dicas* ; *tantundem*, nom. and acc. *tantidem*, genit. even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative, and ablative ; as, *biems*, *rus*, *thus*, *metus*, *mel*, *ſar*, and moſt nouns of the fifth declenſion.

To this claſs of defective nouns may be added theſe neuters, *melos*, a ſong ; *mele*, ſongs ; *epos*, a heroic poem ; *cacoēthes*, an evil cuſtom ; *cete*, whales ; *Tempe*, plural, a beautiful vale in Theſſaly, &c. uſed only in the nom. acc. and voc. ; alſo *grates*, f. thanks.

5. The following nouns want the nominative, and of conſequence the vocative, and therefore are called *tetrap-tōta* : *vīcis*, f. of the place or ſtead of another ; *pecudis*, f. of a beaſt ; *ſordis*, f. of filth ; *ditiōnis*, f. of dominion, power ; *opis*, f. of help. Of theſe, *pecūdis* and *ſordis* have the plural entire : *ditiōnis* wants it altogether : *vīcis* is not uſed in the genitive plural ; *opes* in the plural, generally ſignifies wealth, or power, ſeldom help. To theſe add *nex*, ſlaughter ; *daps*, a diſh of meat ; and *frux*, corn ;

hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire.

6. Some nouns only want one case, and are called *pen-taptōta*: thus, *os*, the mouth; *lux*, light; *fax*, a torch, together with some others, want the genit. plur. *Chaos*, n. a confused mass, wants the genit. sing. and the plural entirely; dat. sing. *chao*. So, *satias*, i. e. *satietas*, a glut or fill of any thing. *Situs*, a situation, nastiness, of the fourth decl. wants the genit. and perhaps the dative sing. also the gen. dat. and abl. plur.

Of nouns defective in number there are various sorts.

1. Several nouns want the plur. from the nature of the things which they express. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, most abstract nouns, &c. as, *justitia*, justice; *ambitus*, ambition; *astus*, cunning; *musica*, music; *apium*, parsley; *argentum*, silver; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *trititum*, wheat; *hordeum*, barley; *avena*, oats; *juventus*, youth, &c. But of these we find several sometimes used in the plural.

2. The following masculines are hardly ever found in the plural.

<i>Aër</i> , <i>aëris</i> , the air.	<i>Nemo</i> , -inis, no body.
<i>Æther</i> , -ëris, the sky.	<i>Penus</i> , -i, or <i>ûs</i> , all manner of provisions.
<i>Fimus</i> , -i, dung.	<i>Pontus</i> , -i, the sea.
<i>Hesperus</i> , -i, the evening star.	<i>Palvis</i> , -ëris, dust.
<i>Limus</i> , -i, slime.	<i>Sanguis</i> , -inis, blood.
<i>Meridies</i> , -iëi, mid-day.	<i>Sopor</i> , -ôris, sleep.
<i>Mundus</i> , a woman's ornaments.	<i>Viscus</i> , -i, bird-lime.
<i>Muscus</i> , -i, moss.	

3. The following feminines are scarcely used in the plural:

<i>Argilla</i> , -æ, potters earth.	<i>Salus</i> , -ûtis, safety.
<i>Fama</i> , -æ, fame.	<i>Sitis</i> , -is, thirst.
<i>Humus</i> , -i, the ground.	<i>Supellex</i> , -ctilis, household furniture.
<i>Lues</i> , -is, a plague.	<i>Tabes</i> , -is, a consumption.
<i>Plebs</i> , plëbis, the common people.	<i>Tellus</i> , -ûris, the earth.
<i>Pubes</i> , -is, the youth.	<i>Vespëra</i> , -æ, the evening.
<i>Quies</i> , -ëtis, rest.	

4. These neuters are seldom used in the plural :

Album, -i, <i>a list of names.</i>	Lutum, -i, <i>clay.</i>
Diluculum, -i, <i>the dawning of day.</i>	Nihil, nihilum, <i>or nil, nothing.</i>
Ebur, -oris, <i>ivory.</i>	Pelagus, -i, <i>the sea.</i>
Gelu, <i>ind. frost.</i>	Penum, -i, <i>and penus, -oris, all kinds of provisions.</i>
Hilum, -i, <i>the black speck of a bean, a trifle.</i>	Sal, Sălis, <i>salt.</i>
Justitium, -i, <i>a vacation, the time when courts do not sit.</i>	Senium, -ii, <i>old age.</i>
Lethum, <i>death.</i>	Ver, veris, <i>the spring.</i>
	Virus, -i, <i>poison.</i>

5. Many nouns want the singular. Such are the names of feasts, books, games, and several cities ; as,

Apollināres, -ium, <i>games in honour of Apollo.</i>	Olympia, -orum, <i>the Olympic games.</i>
Bacchanalia, -ium, <i>the feasts of Bacchus.</i>	Syracūsæ, -arum, <i>Syracuse.</i>
Bucolica, -orum, <i>a book of pastorals.</i>	Hierosolŷma, -orum, <i>Jerusalem ; or Hierosolyma, æ, of the first declension.</i>

6. The following masculines are hardly used in the singular :

Cancelli, <i>lattices.</i>	Postēri, <i>posterity.</i>
Cani, <i>gray hairs.</i>	Supēri, <i>the gods above.</i>
Celēres, -um, <i>the light-horse.</i>	Cassēs, -ium, <i>a hunter's net.</i>
Codicilli, <i>writings.</i>	Fasces, -ium, <i>a bundle of rods, carried before the chief magistrates of Rome.</i>
Dryādes, -um, <i>the nymphs of the woods.</i>	Fines, -ium, <i>the borders of a country, or a country.</i>
Druīdes, -um, <i>the Druids, priests of the ancient Britons and Gauls.</i>	Furfūres, -um, <i>scales in the head.</i>
Decimæ, <i>tithe.</i>	Lemūres, -um, <i>baggoblins, or spirits in the dark.</i>
Fasti, -orum, <i>or fastus, -uum, calendars, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates, &c.</i>	Majōres, -um, <i>ancestors.</i>
Fori, <i>the butches of a ship, seats in the Circus, or the cells of a bee-hive.</i>	Minōres, -um, <i>successors.</i>
Hyādes, -um, <i>the seven stars.</i>	Natāles, -ium, <i>parentage.</i>
Ineptiæ, <i>filly stories.</i>	Procēres, -um, <i>the nobles.</i>
Infēri, <i>the gods below.</i>	Pugillāres, -ium, <i>writing-tables.</i>
Liberi, <i>children.</i>	Sentes, -ium, <i>thorns.</i>
	Veprēs, -ium, <i>briars.</i>
	Vergiliæ, <i>the seven stars.</i>

7. The following feminines want the singular number :

Alpes, -ium, <i>the Alps.</i>	Gades, -ium, <i>Cadiz.</i>	Parietīnæ, <i>ruinous walls.</i>
Angustīæ, <i>difficulties.</i>	Gerræ, <i>trifles.</i>	
Apīnæ, <i>gerewags.</i>	Induciæ, <i>a truce.</i>	Partes, -ium, <i>a party.</i>

Argutix, <i>quirks, wit-ticisms.</i>	Induvix, <i>clothes to put on.</i>	Phalērx, <i>trappings.</i>
Bigx, <i>a chariot drawn —by two horses.</i>	Insidiā, <i>snares</i>	Plagx, <i>nets.</i>
Trigx, ————by three.	Kalendx, Nonx, I-	Pleiādes, -um, <i>the seven stars.</i>
Quadrigx, ————by four.	dus, -uum, <i>names which the Romans</i>	Præstigiā, <i>enchantments.</i>
Braccx, <i>breeches.</i>	<i>gave to certain days</i>	Primitiā, <i>first fruits.</i>
Branchix, <i>the gills of a fish.</i>	<i>in each month.</i>	Quisquilix, <i>sweepings.</i>
Charites, -um, <i>the three graces.</i>	Lapidinā, <i>stone-quarries.</i>	Reliquiā, <i>a remainder.</i>
Cunx, <i>a cradle.</i>	Litērx, <i>an epistle.</i>	Salēbrx, <i>rugged places.</i>
Dix, <i>imprecations, the furies.</i>	Lactes, -ium, <i>the small guts.</i>	Salinā, <i>salt pits.</i>
Divitiā, <i>riches.</i>	Manubiā, <i>spoils taken in war.</i>	Scalx, <i>a ladder.</i>
Excubiā, <i>watches.</i>	Minx, <i>threats.</i>	Scatebrā, <i>a spring.</i>
Exsequiā, <i>funerals.</i>	Minutx, <i>little niceties.</i>	Scopx, <i>a besom.</i>
Exuviā, <i>spoils.</i>	Nugx, <i>trifles.</i>	Tenebrā, <i>darkness.</i>
Facetiā, <i>pleasant sayings.</i>	Nundinā, <i>a market.</i>	Thermx, <i>hot baths.</i>
Ferix, <i>holidays.</i>	Nuptix, <i>a marriage.</i>	Thermopylā, <i>straits of mount Oeta.</i>
Facultates, -ium, <i>one's goods and chattels.</i>	Offucix, <i>cheats.</i>	Tricx, <i>toys.</i>
	Operx, <i>workmen.</i>	Valvā, <i>folding doors.</i>
		Vindicix, <i>a claim of liberty, a defence.</i>

8. The following neuter nouns want the singular :

Acta, <i>public acts or records.</i>	Mœnia, -ium, <i>the walls of a city.</i>
Æstiva, <i>summer-quarters.</i>	Munia, <i>offices.</i>
Arma, <i>arms.</i>	Orgia, <i>the sacred rites of Bacchus.</i>
Bellaria, -orum, <i>sweet meats.</i>	Ovilia, -ium, <i>an inclosure, where the people went to give their votes.</i>
Bona, <i>goods.</i>	Palæcaria, -ium, <i>the dew lap of a beast.</i>
Brevia, -ium, <i>shelves.</i>	Parapherna, <i>all things the wife brings her husband except her dowry.</i>
Castra, <i>a camp.</i>	Parentalia, -ium, <i>solemnities at the funeral of parents.</i>
Charistia, -orum, <i>a peace-feast.</i>	Philtra, <i>love potions.</i>
Cibaria, <i>viaticals.</i>	Præcordia, <i>the bowels.</i>
Comitia, <i>an assembly of the people.</i>	Principia, <i>the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.</i>
Crepundia, <i>children's babblings.</i>	Pythia, <i>games in honour of Apollo.</i>
Cunabula, <i>a cradle.</i>	Rostra, <i>a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people.</i>
Dicteria, <i>scoffs, witticisms.</i>	Scruta, <i>old clothes.</i>
Extā, <i>the entrails.</i>	Sponsalia, -ium, <i>espousals.</i>
Februa, -orum, <i>purifying sacrifices.</i>	Stativa, <i>a standing camp.</i>
Flabra, <i>blasts of wind.</i>	
Fraga, <i>strawberries.</i>	
Hyberna, sc. castra, <i>winter-quarters.</i>	
Ilia, -ium, <i>the entrails.</i>	
Incunabula, <i>a cradle.</i>	
Insecta, <i>insects.</i>	

Iusta, funeral rites.

Lamenta, lamentations.

Lautia, provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.

Lustra, dens of wild beasts.

Magalia, -ium, cottages.

Suovetaurilia, -ium, a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and an ox.

Talaria, -ium, winged shoes.

Teliqua, rough places.

Transtra, the seats where the rowers sit in ships.

Several nouns in each of the above lists are found also in the singular, but in a different sense; thus, *castrum*, a castle; *litera*, a letter of the alphabet, &c.

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbos* and *arbor*, a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri*, and *laurus*, a laurel tree, *sequester*, -tri, or *tris*, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, *hic* or *hoc vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *materia*, -e; or *materies*, -iēi, matter; *plebs*, -is, the common people, or, *plebes*, -is, -ēi, or contracted *plebi*. 5. In termination and gender; as, *tonitrus*, -ūs, masc. *tonitru*, neut. thunder. 6. In declension and gender; as, *penus*, -i, and *ūs*, m. or f. or *penus*, -ōris, neut. all kinds of provision. 7. In termination, gender, and declension; as, *ather*, -ēris, masc. and *atbra*, -e, fem. the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris*, -is, or -idis, a tiger: to which may be added, nouns which have the same signification in different numbers; as, *Fidēna*, -e; or *Fidēna*, -arum, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as, *menda*, -e; and *mendum*, -i, a fault; *cassis*, -idis; and *cassida*, -de, a helmet. So,

Acinus, & -um, a grape stone.

Alvera, & -e, & -ium, a bee-bive.

Amaracus, & -um, sweet marjoram.

Ancile, & -ium, an oval shield.

Angiportus, -ūs, & -i, & -um, a narrow lane.

Aphraetus, & -um, an open ship.

Aplustre, & -um, the flag, colours.

Baculus, & -um, a staff.

Balteus, & -um, a belt.

Batillus, & -um, a fire shovel.

Capulus, & -um, a bill.

Capus, & -o, a capon.

Cepa, & -e, indec. an onion.

Clypeus, & -um, a shield.

Colluvies, & -io, filth, dirt.

Compages, & -go, a joining.

Conger, & -grus, a large eel.

Crocus, & -um, saffron.

Cubitis, & -um, a cubit.

Diluvium, & -es, a deluge.

Elephantus, & -as, -antis, an elephant.

Elégus, & -ēia, an elegy.

Eseda, & -um, a chairot.

Eventus, & -um, an event.

Fulgetra, et -um, lightning.

Galērus, & -um, a bat.

Gibbus, & -a; & -er, -ēris, or *eri*, a bunch, a swelling.

Glutinium, & -gn, glue.

<i>Hebdōmas</i> , & -āda, <i>a week.</i>	<i>Rapa</i> , & -um, <i>a turnip.</i>
<i>Intrīta</i> , & -um, <i>fine mortar, minced meat.</i>	<i>Ruma</i> , & -men, <i>the cud.</i>
<i>Librarium</i> , & -a, <i>a library.</i>	<i>Rufcus</i> , & -um, <i>a brush.</i>
<i>Maceria</i> , & -es, -īci, <i>a wall.</i>	<i>Seps</i> , et -es, <i>f. an hedge.</i>
<i>Milliare</i> , & -um, <i>a mile.</i>	<i>Segmen</i> , et -mentum, <i>a piece or paring.</i>
<i>Monitum</i> , & -us, -ūs, <i>an admonition.</i>	<i>Sibīlus</i> , et, -um, <i>a kissing.</i>
<i>Muria</i> , & -es, -īci, <i>brine or pickle.</i>	<i>Sinus</i> , et, -um, <i>a milk-pail.</i>
<i>Nasus</i> , & -um, <i>the nose.</i>	<i>Spurcitia</i> , et -es, <i>naughtiness.</i>
<i>Obsidio</i> , & -um, <i>a siege.</i>	<i>Stramen</i> , et, -tum, <i>straw.</i>
<i>Oestrus</i> , & -um, <i>a gad bee.</i>	<i>Suffimen</i> , et, -tum, <i>a perfume.</i>
<i>Ostrea</i> , & -um, <i>an oyster.</i>	<i>Tignus</i> , et, -um, <i>a plank.</i>
<i>Peplus</i> , & -um, <i>a veil, a robe.</i>	<i>Toral</i> , et, -āle, <i>a bed-covering.</i>
<i>Pistrina</i> , & -um, <i>a bake-house.</i>	<i>Torcūlar</i> , et, -āre, <i>a wine-press.</i>
<i>Prætextus</i> , -us, & -um, <i>a pretext.</i>	<i>Viscus</i> , et, -um, <i>bird-lime.</i>
	<i>Voternus</i> , et, -um, <i>a letbargy.</i>

Note. The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant: thus, *vasa*, -orum, properly comes from *vasum*, and not from *vas*; but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular, and retained the plural; and so of others.

Division of Nouns according to their signification and derivation.

1. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *Collective* noun; as, *popūlus*, a people; *exercitus*, an army.

2. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *Patronymic* noun; as, *Priamides*, the son of Priamus; *Ætias*, the daughter of Æetes; *Nerine*, the daughter of Nereus. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Æacides*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of Æacus; *Romūlidae*, the Romans, from their first king Romulus.

Patronymic names of men end in *des*; of women, in *is*, *as*, or *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as* of the third; as, *Priamides*, -*de*, &c. pl. -*de*, *darum*, &c.; *Nerine*, -*es*: *Tyndāris*, -*idis*, or -*idos*; *Æetias*, -*adis*, &c.

3. A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *Patrial* or *Gentile* noun; as, *Tros*, *Trois*, a man born at Troy; *Troas*, *-ādis*, a woman born at Troy; *Sicūlus*, *-i*, a Sicilian man; *Sicēlis*, *-īdis*, a Sicilian woman: so, *Macēdo*, *-ōnis*; *Arpīnas*, *-ātis*, a man born in Macedonia, Arpinum; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*. But patrials for the most part are to be considered as adjectives, having a substantive understood; as, *Romānus*, *Atheniensis*, &c.

4. A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *Abstract*; as, *justitia*, justice; *bonitas*, goodness; *dulcedo*, sweetness: from *justus*, just; *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet. The adjectives from which these abstracts come, are called *Concretes*; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

5. A substantive derived from another substantive, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *Diminutive*; as, *libellus*, a little book; *chartūla*, a little paper; *opusculum*, a little work; *corcūlum*, a little heart; *reticulum*, a small net; *scabellum*, a small form; *lapillus*, a little stone; *cultellus*, a little knife; *pagella*, a little page: from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*, *cor*, *rete*, *scamnum*, *lapis*, *culter*, *pagina*. Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive; as, from *puer*, *puerulus*, *puellus*, *puellulus*; from *cista*, *cistula*, *cistella*, *cistellula*; from *homo*, *homuncio*, *homunculus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, *lum*; and are generally of the same gender with their primitives. When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an *Amplificative*, and ends in *o*; as, *Capito*, *-ōnis*, having a large head: So, *naso*, *labeo*, *bucco*, having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

6. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *Verbal* noun; as, *amor*, love; *doctrīna*, learning: from *amo* and *doceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io*, *or*, *us*, and *ura*; as, *lectio*, a lesson; *amator*, a lover; *luctus*, grief; *creatūra*, a creature.

ADJECTIVE.

An adjective is a word *added* to a substantive, to express its quality ; as, *hard, soft*.

We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective therefore always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

An adjective may be thus distinguished from a substantive: If the word *thing* be joined to an adjective, it will make sense ; but if it be joined to a substantive, it will make nonsense: thus, we can say, "a good thing;" but we cannot say, "a book thing."

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives, in all these accidents.

An adjective properly hath neither genders, numbers, nor cases ; but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive with which it is joined.

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension.

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension ; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension :

Acer, <i>sharp.</i>	Campester, <i>belonging to</i>	Sylvester, <i>woody.</i>
Alacer, <i>cheerful.</i>	a plain	[horse] Pedeſter, <i>on foot.</i>
Celer, <i>swift.</i>	Equeſter, <i>belonging to a</i>	Paluſter, <i>marſhy.</i>
Celëber, <i>famous.</i>	Salüber, <i>wholeſome.</i>	Volücer, <i>ſwift.</i>

ADJECTIVES of the FIRST and SECOND DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the first and second declension have their masculine in *us* or *er*, their feminine always in *a*, and their neuter always in *um* ; as, *bonus*, for the masc. *bona*, for the fem. *bonum*, for the neut. good : thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. bon-us,	-a,	-um,	N. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
G bon-i,	-æ,	-i,	G bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum,
D bon-o,	-æ,	-o,	D bon-is,	-is,	-is,
A bon-um,	-am,	-um,	A bon-os,	-as,	-a,
V. bon-e,	-a,	-um,	V. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
A. bon-o,	-â,	-o,	A. bon-is,	-is,	-is.

3. Adjectives of three terminations ; as, *acer* or *acris*, for the masc. *acris*, for the fem. *acre*, for the neut. sharp ; thus,

Sing.	Plur.
N. a-cer or -cris, -cris, -cre,	N. a-cres, -cres, -cria,
G. a-cris, -eris, -cris,	G. a-crium, -crium, -crium,
D. a-cri, -cri, -cri,	D. a-cribus, -cribus, -cribus,
A. a-crem, -crem, -cre,	A. a-cres, -cres, -cria,
V. a-cer or -cris, -cris, -cre,	V. a-cres, -cres, -cria,
A. a-cri, -cri, -cri.	A. a-cribus, -cribus, -cribus.

In like manner, *alacer* or *alacris*, *celer* or *celeris*, *cēleber* or *celebris*, *salūber* or *salūbris*, *volūcer* or *volucris*, &c.

RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular : but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia* : except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. *Dives*, *hospes*, *sospes*, *superstes*, *juvēnis*, *senex*, and *pauper*, have *a* only in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. The following have also *e* in the abl. sing. and *um*, not *ium* in the gen. plur. *Compos*, -ōtis, master of, that hath obtained his desire ; *impos*, -ōtis, unable ; *inops*, -ōpis, poor ; *supplex*, -icis, suppliant, humble ; *uber*, -ēris, fertile ; *consors*, -tis, sharing, a partner ; *degener*, -ēris, degenerate, or degenerating ; *vigil*, watchful ; *puber*, -ēris, of age, marriageable ; and *celer* : Also compounds in *ceps*, *pes*, and *corpor* ; as, *particeps*, partaking of ; *artifex*, -icis, cunning, an artist ; *bipes*, -pēdis, two footed ; *bicorpor*, -ōris, two-bodied, &c. All these have seldom the neut. sing. and almost never the neut. plur. in the nom and acc. To which add *memor*, mindful, which has *memōri*, and *memōrum* : also *deses*, *refes*, *bebes*, *perpes*, *prapes*, *teres*, *concōlor*, *versicōlor*, which likewise for the most part want the genitive plural.

Exc. 3. *Par*, equal, has only *pāri* : but its compounds have either *e* or *i* ; as, *compāre*, or -ri. *Vetus*, old, hath *vetēra*, and *vetērum* ; *plus*, more, which is only used in the neut. sing. has *plure* ; and in the plural, *plures*, *plura*, or *pluria*, *plurium*.

Exc. 4. *Exspes*, hopeless ; and *potis*, -e, able, are only used in the nominative. *Potis* has also sometimes *potis* in the neuter.

REMARKS.

1. Comparatives, and adjectives in *us*, have *e* more frequently than *i*; and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e*; as, *Tiberis regnante*, not *regnanti*, in the reign of Tiberius.
2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*; as, *victricis ferro*, not *victrice*.
3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as, *victror*, victorious, for the masc. *victrix*, for the fem. *Victrix*, in the plur. has likewise the neuter gender; thus, *victrices*, *victricia*: so, *ultor*, and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Victrix* is also neut. in the singular.
4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frenum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jugum*, *limus*, *somnus*, and *animus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declivis*, *-is*, *-e*; and *declivus*, *-a*, *-um*, steep; *imbecillis*, and *imbecillus*, weak; *semisomnis*, and *semisomnus*, half-asleep; *exanimis* and *exanimus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say, *magnanimus*, *flexanimus*, *effrenus*, *levissomnus*; not *magnanimis*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *pusillanimis*, *injugis*, *illimis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis*; not *pusillanimus*, &c. So, *semianimis*, *inermis*, *sublimis*, *acclivis*, *declivis*, *proclivis*; rarely *semianimus*, &c.
5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*; as, *cordatus*, *moratus*, *caelestis*, *adamantinus*, *corporeus*, *agrestis*, *estivus*, &c. from *cor*, *mor*, *calum*, *adamus*, &c. Those which diminish the signification of their primitives are called *Diminutives*; as, *misellus*, *parvulus*, *duriusculus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing are called *Amplificatives*, and end in *osus* or *entus*; as, *vinosus*, *vinulentus*, given to much wine; *operosus*, laborious; *plumbosus*, full of lead; *nodosus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpulentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *auritus*, having long or large ears; *nasutus*, having a large nose; *literatus*, learned, &c.
6. An adjective derived from a substantive or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *Possessive Adjective*; as, *Scoticus*, *paternus*, *berilis*, *alienus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master, another: from *Scotia*, *pater*, *berus*, and *alius*.
7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbals*; as, *amabilis*, amiable; *capax*, capable; *docilis*, teachable; from *amo*, *capto*, *doceo*.
8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *Participials*; as, *sapiens*, wise; *acutus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent. Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens*, *animans*, *rudens*, *serpens*; *advocatus*, *sponsus*, *natus*, *legatus*; *sponsa*, *mata*, *ferta*, sc. *corona*, a garland; *prætexta*, sc. *vestis*; *debitum*, *decretum*, *præceptum*, *fatum*, *testum*, *votum*, &c.
9. Adjectives derived from adverbs are called *Adverbials*; as, *hodiernus*, from *hodie*; *crastinus*, from *cras*; *binus*, from *bis*, &c. There

are likewise adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, from *contra*; *anticus*, from *ante*; *posticus*, from *post*.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multipliative*.

1. The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers are :

Unus,	<i>one.</i>	Triginta,	<i>thirty.</i>
Duo,	<i>two.</i>	Quadragenta,	<i>forty.</i>
Tres,	<i>three.</i>	Quinquagenta,	<i>fifty.</i>
Quatuor,	<i>four.</i>	Sexagenta,	<i>sixty.</i>
Quinque,	<i>five.</i>	Septuagenta,	<i>seventy.</i>
Sex,	<i>six.</i>	Octoginta,	<i>eighty.</i>
Septem,	<i>seven.</i>	Nonaginta,	<i>ninety.</i>
Octo,	<i>eight.</i>	Centum,	<i>a hundred.</i>
Novem,	<i>nine.</i>	Ducenti,	<i>two hundred.</i>
Decem,	<i>ten.</i>	Trecenti,	<i>three hundred.</i>
Undecim,	<i>eleven.</i>	Quadringenti,	<i>four hundred.</i>
Duodecim,	<i>twelve.</i>	Quingenti,	<i>five hundred.</i>
Tredecim,	<i>thirteen.</i>	Sexcenti,	<i>six hundred.</i>
Quatuordecim,	<i>fourteen.</i>	Septingenti,	<i>seven hundred.</i>
Quindecim,	<i>fifteen.</i>	Octingenti,	<i>eight hundred.</i>
Sexdecim,	<i>sixteen.</i>	Nongenti,	<i>nine hundred.</i>
Septendecim,	<i>seventeen.</i>	Mille,	<i>a thousand.</i>
Octodecim,	<i>eighteen.</i>	Duo millia, or	} <i>two thousand.</i>
Novemdecim,	<i>nineteen.</i>	bis mille,	
Viginti,	<i>twenty.</i>	Decem millia, or	} <i>ten thousand.</i>
Viginti unus, or	} <i>twenty-one.</i>	decies mille,	
Unus & viginti,		Viginti millia, or	} <i>twenty thousand.</i>
Viginti duo, or	} <i>twenty-two.</i>	vicies mille,	
Duo & viginti,			

The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

Unus is not used in the plural, unless when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, *una menia*, one wall; or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes.

Duo and *tres* are thus declined :

	Plur.		Plur.
N. duo,	duæ, duo,	N. tres, tres, tria,	
G. duōrum,	duārum, duōrum,	G. trium, trium, trium,	
D. duōbus,	duābus, duōbus,	D. tribus, tribus, tribus,	
A. duos or duo,	duas, duo,	A. tres, tres, tria,	
V. duo,	duæ, duo,	V. tres, tres, tria,	
A. duobus,	duabus, duobus.	A. tribus, tribus, tribus.	

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the Cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti*, -*æ*, -*ta*; *ducentorum*, -*tarum*, -*torum*, &c.

Mille is used either as a substantive or adjective; when taken substantively it is indeclinable in the singular number; and in the plural has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, &c.

Mille, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable, and to express more than one thousand, has the numeral adverbs joined with it; thus, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *mille hominum*, of a thousand men, &c. *Bis mille homines*, two thousand men; *ter mille homines*, &c. But with *mille*, a substantive, we say *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum*, *tria millia*, *quatuor millia*, *centum* or *centena millia hominum*; *Decies centena millia*, a million; *Vicies centena millia*, two millions, &c.

2. The Ordinal numbers are *primus*, first; *secundus*, second, &c. declined like *bonus*.

3. The distributive are, *singuli*, one by one; *binī*, two by two, &c. declined like the plural of *bonus*.

The following table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

Ordinal.	Distributive.	Numeral Adverbs.
1 Primus, a, um.	Singuli, æ, a.	Semcl, once.
2 secundus.	binī.	bis, twice.
3 tertius.	ternī.	ter, thrice.
4 quartus.	quaternī.	quater, four times.
5 quintus.	quini.	quingies, &c.
6 sextus.	senī.	sexies.
7 septimus.	septēni.	septies.
8 octavus.	octōni.	octies.
9 nonus.	novēni.	novies.
10 decimus.	denī.	decies.

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative and superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective which in the positive has fallen into disuse: in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maximus*, for *magnissimus*: *most*, for *morest*; *least*, for *lewest*; *worst*, for *worrest*.

2. These five have their superlative in *simus*:

Facilis, *facilior*, *facillimus*, *easy*. *Imbecillis*, *imbecillior*, *imbecillissimus*, *weak*.
Gracilis, *gracilior*, *gracillimus*, *lean*. *Humilis*, *humilior*, *humillimus*, *low*. *Similis*, *similior*, *simillimus*, *like*.

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the superlative differently:

Citer, *citerior*, *citimus*, *near*. *Matūrus*, *-ior*, *maturissimus*, *or*
Dexter, *dexterior*, *dextimus*, *right*. *Maturissimus*, *ripe*.
Sinister, *sinisterior*, *sinistimus*, *left*. *Posterus*, *posterior*, *postremus*,
Exter, *-erior*, *extimus*, *or extrē-* *behind*.
mus, *outward*. *Supērus*, *-rior*, *suprēmus*, *or sum-*
Infērus, *-ior*, *infimus*, *or imus*, *below*. *mus*, *high*.
Intērus, *interior*, *intimus*, *inward*. *Vetus*, *veterior*, *veterrimus*, *old*.

4. Compounds in *dīcus*, *lōquus*, *fīcus*, and *volus*, have *entior*, and *entissimus*; as, *malēdīcus*, railing, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*: So *magnīlōquus*, one that boasteth; *benēfīcus*, beneficent; *malēvōlus*, malevolent; *mirīfīcus*, wonderful, *-entior*, *-entissimus*, or *mirīfīcissimus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased, yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive:

Deterior, *worse*, *deterrimus*. *Propiōr*, *nearer*, *proximus*, *nearest* or
Ociōr, *swifter*, *ocissimus*. *next*.
Prior, *former*, *primus*. *Uterior*, *farther*, *ultimus*.

2. The following want the comparative:

Inclūtus, *inclutissimus*, *renowned*. *Nupērus*, *nuperrimus*, *late*.
Merītus, *meritissimus*, *deserving*. *Par*, *parissimus*, *equal*.
Novus, *novissimus*, *new*. *Sacer*, *sacerrimus*, *sacred*.

3. The following want the superlative:

Adolescens, *adolescētiōr*, *young*. *Pronus*, *pronior*, *inclined down-*
Diuturnus, *diuturnior*, *lasting*. *wards*.
Ingens, *ingētiōr*, *huge*. *Satur*, *saturior*, *full*.
Juvenis, *junior*, *young*. *Senex*, *senior*, *old*.
Optimus, *optimior*, *rich*.

To supply the superlative of *juvénis* or *adolescens*, we say *minimus natu*, the youngest; and of *senex*, *maximus natu*, the oldest.

Adjectives in *ilis*, *ālis*, and *bilis*, also want the superlative; as, *civilis*, *civilior*, civil; *regālis*, *regalior*, regal; *flēbilis*, *-ior*, lamentable. So *juvenilis*, youthful; *exilis*, small; *regālis*, like a king, &c.

To these add several others of different terminations: Thus, *arcānus*, *-ior*, secret; *declivis*, *-ior*, bending downwards; *longinquus*, *-ior*, far off; *propinquus*, *-ior*, near.

Anterior, former; *sequior*, worse; *satior*, better; are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all: such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *versicolor*, of divers colours; *pestifer*, poisonous: also adjectives in *us* pure, in *ivus*, *inus*, *orus*, or *imus*, and diminutives; as, *dubius*, doubtful; *vacuus*, empty; *fugitivus*, that flieth away; *matutinus*, early; *canōrus*, shrill; *legitimus*, lawful; *tenuis*, somewhat tender; *majusculus*, &c.: together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almus*, gracious; *præcox*, *-ōcis*, soon or early ripe; *mirus*, *egenus*, *lacer*, *memor*, *sospes*, &c.

This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valde* or *maxime* for the superlative; thus, *egēnus*, needy; *magis egenus*, more needy; *valde* or *maxime egenus*, very or most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

PRONOUN.

A pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a noun*.

Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou*, for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, he turned his arms against his country*.

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen; *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*; *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noſter*, *veſter*; *noſtras*, *veſtras*, and *cujas*.

Three of them are substantives, *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; the other fifteen are adjectives.

Ego, I.

Sing.
Nom. ego, I.
Gen. mei, of me.
Dat. mihi, to me.
Acc. me, me.
Voc. ———
Abl. me, with me.

Plur.
Nom. nos, we.
Gen. nostrum or nostri, of us.
Dat. nobis, to us.
Acc. nos, us.
Voc. ———
Abl. nobis, with us.

Tu, thou.

Sing.
N. tu, thou,
G. tui, of thee,
D. tibi, to thee,
A. te, thee,
V. tu, O thou,
A. te, with thee, } or you.

Plur.
N. vos, ye or you,
G. vestrum or -tri, of you,
D. vobis, to you,
A. vos, you,
V. vos, O ye or you,
A. vobis, with you.

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

Sing.
N. ———
G. sui, of himself, of herself, of itself,
D. sibi, to himself, to herself, &c.
A. se, himself, &c.
V. ———
A. se, with himself, &c.

Plur.
N. ———
G. sui, of themselves,
D. sibi, to themselves,
A. se, themselves,
V. ———
A. se, with themselves.

Obs. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person: thus we cannot say, *O ego*, *O I*; *O nos*, *O we*.

Obs. 2. *Mibi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mē*.

Obs. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrorum* and *nostrarum*; of *tu*, *vestrorum* and *vestrarum*, which were afterwards contracted into *nostrum* and *vestrum*.

We commonly use *nostrum* and *vestrum* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostri* and *vestri* after other words.

The English substantive pronouns, *he*, *she*, *it*, are expressed in Latin by these pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, or *is*; as,

Ille, for the masc. *illa*, for the fem. *illud*, for the neut. that: or, *ille*, he; *illa*, she; *illud*, it, or that; thus,

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. ille,	illa,	illud,	N. illi,	illæ,	illa,
G. illius,	illius,	illius,	G. illorum,	illarum,	illorum,
D. illi,	illi,	illi,	D. illis,	illis,	illis,
A. illum,	illam,	illud,	A. illos,	illas,	illa,
V. ille,	illa,	illud,	V. illi,	illæ,	illa,
A. illo,	illâ,	illo.	A. illis,	illis,	illis.

Ipse, he himself, *ipsa*, she herself, *ipsum*, itself; and *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, that, are declined like *ille*; only *ipse* has *ipsum* in the nom. acc. and voc. sing. neut.

Ipse is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; and has in Latin the same force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun; as, *ego ipse*, I myself.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	N. hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G. hujus,	hujus,	hujus,	G. horum,	harum,	horum,
D. huic,	huic,	huic,	D. his,	his,	his,
A. hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	A. hos,	has,	hæc,
V. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	V. hi,	hæ,	hæc,
A. hoc,	hac,	hoc.	A. his,	his,	his.

Is, ea, id; *he, she, it*; or *that*.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. is,	ea,	id,	N. ii,	eæ,	ea,
G. ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	G. eorum,	earum,	eorum,
D. ei,	ei,	ei,	D. iis, or eis, &c.		
A. eum,	eam,	id,	A. eos,	eas,	ea,
V. _____			V. _____		
A. eo,	eâ,	eo.	A. iis, or eis, &c.		

Quis, quæ, quod, or *quid*? which, what? Or *Quis*? who or what man? *quæ*? who? or what woman? *quod* or *quid*? what? or what thing? thus,

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. quis,	quæ,	quod or quid,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. queis or quibus, &c.		
A. quem,	quam,	quod or quid,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. _____			V. _____		
A. quo,	qua,	quo.	A. queis, or quibus, &c.		

Qui, quæ, quod, who, which, that ; Or *vir qui*, the man *who* or *that* ; *foemina quæ*, the woman *who* or *that* ; *negotium quod*, the thing *which* or *that* : genit. *vir cujus*, the man *whose* or *of whom* ; *mulier cujus*, the woman *whose*, or *of whom* ; *negotium cujus*, the thing *of which*, *seldom whose*, &c. thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. qui,	quæ,	quod,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. queis or quibus,	&c.	
A. quem,	quam,	quod,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. —	—	—	V. —	—	—
A. quo,	qua,	quo.	A. queis or quibus,	&c.	

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*. *Meus*, my or mine ; *tuns*, thy or thine ; *suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um ; and *noster*, our ; *vester*, your, like *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, of the first and second declension.

Nostras, of our country ; *vestras*, of your country ; *cujas*, of what or which country, are declined like *felix*, of the third declension : gen. *nostratis*, dat. *nostrati*, &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that signify things, which cannot be addressed, or called upon, want the vocative.

Meus hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the voc. sing. masc.

The relative *qui* has frequently *qui* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

Qui is sometimes used for *quis* : and instead of *cujus* the genit. of *quis* we find an adjective pronoun *cujus*, -a, -um.

Simple pronouns, with respect to their signification, are divided into the following classes :

1. *Demonstratives*, which point out any person or thing present, or as if present : *Ego*, *tu*, *hic*, *iste*, and sometimes *ille*, *is*, *ipse*.

2. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before : *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*

3. *Possessives*, which signify possession : *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*.

4. *Patrials or Gentiles*, which signify one's country : *nostras*, *vestras*, *cujas*.

5. *Interrogatives*, by which we ask a question : *quis ? cujus ?* When they do not ask a question, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the same nature.

6. *Reciprocals*, which again call back or represent the same object to the mind : *sui*, and *suus*.

COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variously :

1. With other pronouns ; as, *isthic, isthac, isthoc, isthuc, or istuc*. Acc. *Isthunc, isthanc, isthoc, or isthuc*. Abl. *Isthoc, isthac, isthoc*. Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *isthac*, of *iste* and *hic*. So *illie*, of *ille* and *hic*.

2. With some other parts of speech ; as, *hujusmodi, cujusmodi, &c.* *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quocum or quicum* and *quibuscum* : *eccum, eccam* ; *eccos, eccas*, and sometimes *ecce*, in the nom. sing. of *ecce* and *is*. So *ellum*, of *ecce* and *ille*.

3. With some syllable added : as, *tute*, of *tu* and *te*, used only in the nom. *egomet, tutemet, suimet*, through all the cases, thus, *meimet, tuimet, &c.* of *ego, tu, sui*, and *met*. Instead of *tumet* in the nom. we say, *tutemet* : *biccine, bæccine, &c.* in all the cases that end in *e* ; of *hic* and *cine* : *Meapte, tuapte, suapte, nostrapte, vestapte*, in the ablat. fem. and sometimes *meopte, tuopte, &c.* of *meus, &c.* and *pte* : *bicce, bæcce, hocce* ; *hujusce, bice, bisce, hocce* ; of *hic* and *ce* : whence *hujuscemodi, ejuscemodi, cujuscemodi*. So *IDEM*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined :

	Sing.		Plur.
N. idem,	eādem, īdem,	N. iidem,	eādem, eādem,
G. ejusdem,	ejusdem, ejusdem,	G. eorundem,	eorundem, eorundem,
D. eidem,	eidem, eidem,	D. eisdem or iisdem,	&c.
A. eundem,	candem, idem,	A. eodem,	eādem, eadem,
P. idem,	eadem, idem.	P. iidem,	eādem, eadem,
A. eōdem,	eādem, eōdem.	A. eisdem or iisdem,	&c.

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*.

Quis in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded : but *qui* is always the first.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are, *quisnam*, who ? *quispiam, quisquam*, any one ; *quisque*, every one ; *quisquis*, who-soever ; which are thus declined :

Nom.		Gen.	Dat.
Quisnam,	quænam, quodnam or quidnam ;	cujusnam,	cuinam,
Quispiam,	quæpiam, quodpiam or quidpiam ;	cujuspiam,	cuipiam,
Quisquam,	quæquam, quodquam or quidquam ;	cujusquam,	cuiquam,
Quique,	quæque, quodque or quidque ;	cujusque,	cuique,
Quisquis,	——— quidquid or quicquid ;	cujuscujus,	cui cui.

And so in other cases, according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has not the feminine at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam*, for *quidquam*. Accusative, *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nominative sing. fem. and in the nominative and accusative plur. neut. as, *aliquis*, some; *ecquis*, who? of *ec* and *quis*; also *nequis*, *siquis*, *numquis*, which for the most part are read separately, thus, *ne quis*; *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined:

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
Aliquis, aliqua,	aliquod or aliquid,	alicujus,	alicui,
Ecquis, ecqua or ecquæ,	ecquod or ecquid,	eccujus,	eccui,
Si quis, si qua,	si quod or si quid,	si ejus,	si cui,
Ne quis, ne qua,	ne quod or ne quid,	ne ejus,	ne cui.
Num quis, num qua,	num quod or num quid,	num ejus,	num cui.

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are *ecquisnam*, who? *unusquisque*, gen. *unuscujusque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whosoever; *quidam*, some; *quilibet*, *quivis*, any one, whom you please; which are thus declined:

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
Quicunque, quæcunque,	quodcunque,	cujuscunque,	cuicunque,
Quidam, quædam,	quoddam or quiddam,	cujusdam,	cuidam,
Quilibet, quælibet,	quodlibet or quidlibet,	cujuslibet,	cuilibet,
Quivis, quævis,	quodvis or quidvis,	cujusvis,	cuivis.

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus, *aliquibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds in comic writers, have sometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam*, or *quiddam*, in the acc. sing. and *quorundam*, *querundam*, *quorundam*, in the gen. plur. *n* being put instead of *m*, for the better sound.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquod*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c. are used when they agree with a substantive in the same case; *quid*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quidvis*, &c. for the most part have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason they are by some reckoned substantives.

VERB.

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, The boy *reads*. The sun *shines*. The man *loves*.

Or, A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.

It is called *Verb* or *Word*, by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all: thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care*.

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word expresses an affirmation or assertion is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall, I walk, walk thou*. Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk, a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor*, -ōris, love, a substantive, and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*; because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but simply existing, or existing in a certain state or condition; as in a state of motion or rest, &c.

1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon, as, *amāre*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent, by which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit.

The verb *Active* is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passeth over* to the object, or hath an effect on some other thing; as, *scribo literas*, I write letters; but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passeth not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive*; as, *ambulo*, I walk; *curro*, I run, which are likewise called *Neuter Verbs*. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *fiſcēre*,

to stop ; *incipere*, to begin ; *durare*, to endure, or to harden, &c.

Verbs which simply signify *being*, are likewise called *Substantive* verbs ; as, *esse* or *existere*, to be, or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb ; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into, *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle* ; as, *amans*, loving ; *amatus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine* ; as, *amandum*, loving ; *amatum*, to love ; *amatu*, to love, or to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices*, *Modes*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

There are two voices ; the *Active* and *Passive*.

The modes are four ; *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

The tenses are five ; the *Present*, the *Preter-imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future*.

The numbers are two ; *Singular* and *Plural*.

The persons are three ; *First*, *Second*, *Third*.

1. *Voice* expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object, whether as acting, or being acted upon. The *Active* voice signifies action ; as, *amo*, I love : the *Passive*, suffering, or being the object of an action ; as, *amor*, I am loved.

2. *Modes* or *Moods* are the various *manners* of expressing the signification of the verb.

The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively ; as, *amo*, I love ; *amabo*, I shall love : or asks a question ; as, *an tu amas ?* dost thou love ?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verb, and cannot make a full meaning by itself ; as, *si me obsecrct, redibo*, if he intreat me, I will return. *Ter.*

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or intreats ; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb, without limiting it to any person or number; as, *amāre*, to love.

3. *Tenses* or *Times* express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer.

Time in general is divided into three parts, the present, past, and future.

Past time is expressed three different ways. When we speak of a thing, which was doing, but not finished at some former time, we use the *Preter-imperfect*, or past time not completed; as, *scribēbam*, I was writing.

When we speak of a thing now finished, we use the *Preter-perfect*, or past time completed; as, *scripsi*, I wrote, or have written.

When we speak of a thing finished at or before some past time, we use the *Preter-pluperfect*, or past time more than completed; as, *scripsēram*, I had written.

Future time is expressed two different ways. A thing may be considered, either as simply about to be done, or as actually finished, at some future time; as, *scribam*, I shall write, or I shall [*tben*] be writing; *scripsēro*, I shall have written.

4. *Number* marks how many we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer.

5. *Person* shews to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, to the person addressed, or to some other person or thing.

Verbs have two numbers and three persons, to agree with substantive nouns and pronouns in these respects: for a verb properly hath neither numbers nor persons, but certain terminations answering to the person and number of its nominative.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, or, as it were, yoked together, according to Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person.

The Latins have four different ways of varying verbs, called the *First*, the *Second*, the *Third*, and the *Fourth Conjugation*.

The Conjugations are thus distinguished:

The *First* has *a* long before *re* of the Infinitive; the *Second* has *e* long, the *Third* has *e* short, and the *Fourth* has *i* long, before *re* of the Infinitive.

Except *dare*, to give, which has *ā* short; and also its compounds; thus, *Circundāre*, to surround; *circundāmus*, -*dātis*, -*dābam*, -*dābo*, &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses:

ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.**Present Tense.*

	<i>Singular.</i> <i>Persons.</i>			<i>Plural.</i> <i>Persons.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Conjugat.	1. -o,	-as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
	2. -eo,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
	3. -o,	-is,	-it ;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-unt.
	4. -io,	-is,	-it ;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

Imperfect.

1.	-ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat ;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
2.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
3.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
4.	-iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat ;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.

Future.

1.	-ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit ;	-ābīmus,	-ābītis,	-ābunt.
2.	-ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit ;	-ēbīmus,	-ēbītis,	-ēbunt.
3.	-am,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
4.	-iam,	-ies,	-iet ;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ient.

*Subjunctive Mode.**Present Tense.*

1.	-em,	-es	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
2.	-eān,	-eas,	-eat ;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
3.	-am,	-as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
4.	-iam,	-ias,	-iat ;	-iāmus,	-iātis,	-iant.

Imperfect.

1.	-ārem,	-āres,	-āret ;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.
2.	-ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret ;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
3.	-ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret ;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
4.	-īrem,	-īres,	-īret ;	-irēmus,	-irētis,	-īrent.

Imperative Mode.

	2	3	2	3
1.	-a or -āto,	-āto ;	-āte or -ātōte,	-anto.
2.	-e or -ēto,	-ēto ;	-ēte or -ētōte,	-ento.
3.	-e or -īto,	-īto ;	-īte or -ītōte,	-unto.
4.	-i or -īto,	-īto ;	-ītē or -ītōte,	-iuntō.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

1. -or,	-āris or -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āmīni,	-antur.
2. -cor,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
3. -or,	-ēris or -ēre,	-itur;	-imur,	-imīni,	-untur.
4. -ior,	-iris or -ire,	-itur;	-imur,	-imīni,	-iuntur.

Imperfect.

1. -ābar,	-ābāris or -ābāre,	-ābātur;	-ābāmur,	-ābāmīni,	-ābantur.
2. -ēbar,	-ēbāris or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmīni,	-ēbantur.
3. -ēbar,	-ēbāris or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmīni,	-ēbantur.
4. -iēbar,	-iēbāris,	-iēbāre,-iēbātur;	-iēbāmur,	-iēbāmīni,	-iēbantur.

Future.

1. -ābor,	-ābēris or -abēre,	-ābītur;	-ābīmur,	-ābīmīni,	-ābuntur.
2. -ēbor,	-ēbēris or -ebēre,	-ēbītur;	-ēbīmur,	-ēbīmīni,	-ēbuntur.
3. -ar,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
4. -iar,	-iēris or -iēre,	-iētur;	-iēmur,	-iēmīni,	-ientur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1. -er,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
2. -ear,	-eāris or -eāre,	-eātur;	-eāmur,	-eāmīni,	-eantur.
3. -ar,	-āris or -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āmīni,	-antur.
4. -iar,	-iāris or -iāre,	-iātur;	-iāmur,	-iāmīni,	-iantur.

Imperfect.

1. -arer,	-areris or -arere,	-aretur;	-aremur,	-aremyīni,	-arentur.
2. -erer,	-ereris or -erere,	-eretur;	-eremur,	-eremyīni,	-erentur.
3. -ērer,	-ēreris or -ēre,	-ēretur;	-ēremur,	-ēremyīni,	-ērentur.
4. -īrer,	-īreris or -īre,	-īretur;	-īremur,	-īremyīni,	-īrentur.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1. -āre or -ātor,	-ātor;	-āmīni,	-āntor.	
2. -ēre or -ētor,	-ētor;	-ēmīni,	-ēntor.	
3. -ēre or -ītor,	-ītor;	-imīni,	-untor.	
4. -īre or -ītor,	-ītor;	-imīni,	-iuntor.	

Observe, Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third person plur. of the present indic. active, and *iuntur* in the passive; and so in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iēbam* and *iam*; *iēbar* and *iar*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the Conjugations. Thus,

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Perf.</i>	-i,	-isti,	-it;	-imus,	-istis,	-erunt or -ēre,
<i>Plu.</i>	-eram,	-eras,	-erat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-erant.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Perf.</i>	-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-ērīmus,	-ērītis,	-ērint.
<i>Plu.</i>	-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.
<i>Fut.</i>	-ēro,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-ērīmus,	-ērītis,	-ērint.

These Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active.

SUM is an irregular verb, and thus conjugated :

Principal Parts.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>
Sum,	Fui,	esse, To be.

*Indicative Mode.*Present Tense. *am.*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Person</i>		
1.	Sum, <i>I am,</i>	Sūmus, <i>We are,</i>
2.	Es, <i>Thou art,</i> or <i>you are.</i>	Estis, <i>Ye or you are,</i>
3.	Est, <i>He is;</i>	Sunt, <i>They are.</i>

Imperfect. *was.*

1.	Eram, <i>I was,</i>	Erāmus, <i>We were,</i>
2.	Eras, <i>Thou wast,</i> or <i>you were,</i>	Erātis, <i>Ye were,</i>
3.	Erat, <i>He was,</i>	Erant, <i>They were.</i>

Perfect. *have been, or was.*

1.	Fui, <i>I have been,</i>	Fuīmus, <i>We have been,</i>
2.	Fuisti, <i>Thou hast been,</i>	Fuistis, <i>Ye have been,</i>
3.	Fuit, <i>He hath been;</i>	Fuērunt, or -ēre, <i>They have been.</i>

Plu-perfect. *had been.*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Fuëram, <i>I had been,</i> | Fuërāmus, <i>We had been,</i> |
| 2. Fueras, <i>Thou hadst been,</i> | Fueratis, <i>Ye had been,</i> |
| 3. Fuerat, <i>He had been ;</i> | Fuerant, <i>They had been.</i> |

Future. *shall or will.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Ero, <i>I shall be,</i> | Erīmus, <i>We shall be,</i> |
| 2. Eris, <i>Thou shalt be,</i> | Eritis, <i>Ye shall be,</i> |
| 3. Erit, <i>He shall be ;</i> | Erunt, <i>They shall be.</i> |

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may or can.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Sim, <i>I may be,</i> | Sīmus, <i>We may be,</i> |
| 2. Sis, <i>Thou mayest be,</i> | Sitis, <i>Ye may be,</i> |
| 3. Sit, <i>He may be ;</i> | Sint, <i>They may be.</i> |

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Essem, <i>I might be,</i> | Essēmus, <i>We might be,</i> |
| 2. Esset, <i>Thou mightest be,</i> | Essetis, <i>Ye might be,</i> |
| 3. Esset, <i>He might be ;</i> | Essent, <i>They might be. .</i> |

Perfect. *may have.*

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuërim, <i>I may have been,</i> | Fuërīmus, <i>We may have been,</i> |
| 2. Fueris, <i>Thou mayest have been,</i> | Fueritis, <i>Ye may have been,</i> |
| 3. Fuerit, <i>He may have been ;</i> | Fuerint, <i>They may have been.</i> |

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Fuissē, <i>I might have been,</i> | Fuissēmus, <i>We might have been,</i> |
| 2. Fuisses, <i>Thou mightest have been,</i> | Fuissetis, <i>Ye might have been,</i> |
| 3. Fuisset, <i>He might have been ;</i> | Fuissent, <i>They might have been.</i> |

Future. *shall have.*

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuëro, <i>I shall have been,</i> | Fuërīmus, <i>We shall have been,</i> |
| 2. Fueris, <i>Thou shalt have been,</i> | Fueritis, <i>Ye shall have been,</i> |
| 3. Fuerit, <i>He shall have been ;</i> | Fuerint, <i>They shall have been.</i> |

Imperative Mode.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 2. Es vel esto, <i>Be thou,</i> | Este vel estōte, <i>Be ye,</i> |
| 3. Esto, <i>Let him be ;</i> | Sunto, <i>Let them be.</i> |

Infinitive Mode.

Pres. Esse, *To be.*

Perf. Fuisse, *To have been.*

Fut. Esse futurus, -a, -um, *To be about to be.*

Fuisse futurus, -a, -um, *To have been about to be.*

*Participle.**Future. Futūrus, -a, -um, About to be.*

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood; because the several persons are sufficiently distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner however at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego sum*, I am; *tu es*, thou art, or you are; *ille est*, he is; *nos sumus*, we are, &c. So *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *ille amat*, he loveth or loves; *nos amamus*, we love; &c.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, thou art, or much oftener, you are; *tu eras*, thou wast, or you were; *tu sis*, thou mayst be, or you may be, &c. So *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *tu amabas*, thou lovedst, or you loved, &c.

Verbs are thus varied in the different Conjugations;

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Principal Parts.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
<i>Amo,</i>	<i>amāre,</i>	<i>amavi,</i>	<i>amatum, To love.</i>

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense. love, do love, or am loving.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. <i>Am-o,</i>	<i>I love,</i>
	2. <i>Am-as,</i>	<i>Thou lovest, or you love,</i>
	3. <i>Am-at,</i>	<i>He loveth, or he loves;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. <i>Am-āmus,</i>	<i>We love,</i>
	2. <i>Am-atis,</i>	<i>Ye or you love,</i>
	3. <i>Am-ant,</i>	<i>They love.</i>

Imperfect. loved, did love, or was loving.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. <i>Am-ābam,</i>	<i>I loved,</i>
	2. <i>Am-abas,</i>	<i>Thou lovedst,</i>
	3. <i>Am-abat,</i>	<i>He loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. <i>Am-abamus,</i>	<i>We loved,</i>
	2. <i>Am-abatis,</i>	<i>Ye or you loved,</i>
	3. <i>Am-abant,</i>	<i>They loved.</i>

Perfect. *loved, have loved, or did love.*

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. Am-āvi, | <i>I have loved,</i> |
| | 2. Am-avisti, | <i>Thou hast loved,</i> |
| | 3. Am-avit, | <i>He hath loved;</i> |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. Am-āvimus, | <i>We have loved,</i> |
| | 2. Am-avistis, | <i>Ye have loved,</i> |
| | 3. Am-avērunt, v. -avēre, | <i>They have loved.</i> |

Plu-perfect. *had.*

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. Am-āvērā, | <i>I had loved,</i> |
| | 2. Am-averas, | <i>Thou hadst loved,</i> |
| | 3. Am-averat, | <i>He had loved;</i> |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. Am-averamus, | <i>We had loved,</i> |
| | 2. Am-averatis, | <i>Ye had loved,</i> |
| | 3. Am-averant, | <i>They had loved.</i> |

Future. *shall or will.*

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. Am-ābo, | <i>I shall love,</i> |
| | 2. Am-abis, | <i>Thou shalt love,</i> |
| | 3. Am-abit, | <i>He shall love;</i> |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. Am-abimus, | <i>We shall love,</i> |
| | 2. Am-abitis, | <i>Ye shall love,</i> |
| | 3. Am-abunt, | <i>They shall love.</i> |

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may or can.*

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. Am-em, | <i>I may love,</i> |
| | 2. Am-es, | <i>Thou mayst love,</i> |
| | 3. Am-et, | <i>He may love;</i> |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. Am-ēmus, | <i>We may love,</i> |
| | 2. Am-etis, | <i>Ye may love,</i> |
| | 3. Am-ent, | <i>They may love.</i> |

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. Am-ārem, | <i>I might love,</i> |
| | 2. Am-ares, | <i>Thou mightst love,</i> |
| | 3. Am-aret, | <i>He might love;</i> |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. Am-aremus, | <i>We might love,</i> |
| | 2. Am-aretis, | <i>Ye might love,</i> |
| | 3. Am-arent, | <i>They might love.</i> |

Perfect. *may have.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvērim,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
2. Am-averis,	<i>Thou mayst have loved,</i>
3. Am-averit,	<i>He may have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-averimus,	<i>We may have loved,</i>
2. Am-averitis,	<i>Ye may have loved,</i>
3. Am-averint,	<i>They may have loved.</i>

Plu. perfect. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-avissēm,	<i>I might have loved,</i>
2. Am-avisses,	<i>Thou mightst have loved,</i>
3. Am-avisset,	<i>He might have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-avissēmus,	<i>We might have loved,</i>
2. Am-avissetis,	<i>Ye might have loved,</i>
3. Am-avissent,	<i>They might have loved.</i>

Future. *shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvēro,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
2. Am-averis,	<i>Thou shalt have loved,</i>
3. Am-averit,	<i>He shall have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-averimus,	<i>We shall have loved,</i>
2. Am-averitis,	<i>Ye shall have loved,</i>
3. Am-averint,	<i>They shall have loved.</i>

Imperative Mode.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-a, <i>vel</i> am-āto,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love,</i>
3. Am-ato,	<i>Let him love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-āte, <i>vel</i> am-atōte,	<i>Love ye, or do ye love,</i>
3. Am-anto,	<i>Let them love.</i>

Infinitive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i> Am-āre,	<i>To love,</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Am-avisse,	<i>To have loved,</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Esse amaturus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to love,</i>
Fuisse amaturus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to love.</i>

Participle.

<i>Present,</i> Am-ans,	<i>Loving.</i>
<i>Future,</i> Am-aturus, -a, -um,	<i>About to love.</i>

Gerunds.

<i>Nom.</i> Am-andum,	<i>Loving,</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Am-andi,	<i>Of loving,</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Am-ando,	<i>To loving,</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Am-andum,	<i>Loving,</i>
<i>Abi.</i> Am-ando,	<i>With loving.</i>

*Supine.**Former.* Am-ātum,*To love,**Latter.* Am-atu,*To love, or to be loved.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

*Present Indicative.**Perfect Participle.**Infinitive.*

Amor,

amātus,

amāri, *to be loved.**Indicative Mode.**Present Tense.* am.

- Sing.* 1. Am-or, *I am loved,*
 2. Am-āris, *vel -āre,* *Thou art loved,*
 3. Am-atur, *He is loved ;*
Plur. 1. Am-amur, *We are loved,*
 2. Am-amīni, *Ye or you are loved,*
 3. Am-antur, *They are loved.*

Imperfect. was.

- Sing.* 1. Am-ābar, *I was loved,*
 2. Am-abāris *vel -abāre,* *Thou wast loved,*
 3. Am-abatur, *He was loved ;*
Plur. 1. Am-abamur, *We were loved,*
 2. Am-abamīni, *Ye were loved,*
 3. Am-abantur, *They were loved.*

Perfect. am ; *have been, or was.*

- Sing.* 1. Amatus sum, *vel fui,* *I have been loved,*
 2. Amatus es, *v. fuisti,* *Thou hast been loved,*
 3. Amatus est, *v. fuit,* *He hath been loved ;*
Plur. 1. Amati sumus, *v. fuimus,* *We have been loved,*
 2. Amati estis, *v. fuistis,* *Ye have been loved,*
 3. Amati sunt, *fuērunt, v. fuēre,* *They have been loved.*

Plu-perfect. had been, or was.

- Sing.* 1. Amatus eram *vel fueram,* *I had been loved,*
 2. Amatus eras *v. fueras,* *Thou hadst been loved,*
 3. Amatus erat *v. fuerat,* *He had been loved ;*
Plur. 1. Amati eramus *v. fueramus,* *We had been loved,*
 2. Amati eratis *v. fueratis,* *Ye had been loved,*
 3. Amati erant *v. fuerant,* *They had been loved.*

Future. shall, or will be.

- Sing.* 1. Am-ābor, *I shall be loved,*
 2. Am-abēris *vel -abēre,* *Thou shalt be loved,*
 3. Am-abitur, *He shall be loved ;*

- Plur.* 1. Am-abimur, *We shall be loved,*
 2. Am-abimini, *Ye shall be loved,*
 3. Am-abuntur, *They shall be loved.*

*Subjunctive Mode.*Present Tense. *may or can be.*

- Sing.* 1. Am-er, *I may be loved,*
 2. Am-ēris vel ēre, *Thou mayst be loved,*
 3. Am-etur, *He may be loved ;*
Plur. 1. Am-ēmur, *We may be loved,*
 2. Am-emiini, *Ye may be loved,*
 3. Am-entur, *They may be loved.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should be.*

- Sing.* 1. Am-ārer, *I might be loved,*
 2. Am-arēris vel arēre, *Thou mightst be loved,*
 3. Am-aretur, *He might be loved ;*
Plur. 1. Am-ārēmur, *We might be loved,*
 2. Am-aremini, *Ye might be loved,*
 3. Am-arentur, *They might be loved.*

Perfect. *may have been.*

- Sing.* 1. Amatus sim vel fuerim, *I may have been loved,*
 2. Amatus sis v. fueris, *Thou mayst have been loved,*
 3. Amatus sit v. fuerit, *He may have been loved ;*
Plur. 1. Amati simus v. fuerimus, *We may have been loved,*
 2. Amati sitis v. fueritis, *Ye may have been loved,*
 3. Amati sint v. fuerint, *They may have been loved.*

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have been ; or had been.*

- Sing.* 1. Amatus essem vel fuisset, *I might have been loved,*
 2. Amatus esses v. fuisses, *Thou mightst have been loved,*
 3. Amatus esset v. fuisset, *He might have been loved ;*
Plur. 1. Amati essemus v. fuissetus, *We might have been loved,*
 2. Amati essetis v. fuissetis, *Ye might have been loved,*
 3. Amati essent v. fuissent, *They might have been loved.*

Future. *shall have been.*

- Sing.* 1. Amatus fuēro, *I shall have been loved,*
 2. Amatus fueris, *Thou shalt have been loved,*
 3. Amatus fuerit, *He shall have been loved ;*
Plur. 1. Amati fuērimus, *We shall have been loved,*
 2. Amati fueritis, *Ye shall have been loved,*
 3. Amati fuerint, *They shall have been loved.*

Imperative Mode.

<i>Sing.</i>	2. Am-āre vel am-ātor,	<i>Be thou loved,</i>
	3. Am-ātor,	<i>Let him be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	2. Am-amīni,	<i>Be ye loved,</i>
	3. Am-antor,	<i>Let them be loved.</i>

Infinitive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i>	Am-āre,	<i>To be loved,</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	Esse v. fuisse amatus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been loved,</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	Am-ātum iri,	<i>To be about to be loved.</i>

Participle.

<i>Perf.</i>	Am-atus, -a, -um,	<i>Loved,</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	Am-andus, -a, -um,	<i>To be loved.</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Dōceo, dōcui, doctum, docēre, To teach.

Indicative Mode.

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i>	Doc-eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Doc-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebāmus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Perf.</i>	Doc-uī,	-uīsti,	-uit;	-uīmus,	-uīstis,	-uērunt, v. -uēre.
<i>Plu.</i>	Doc-uēram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-uerāmus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Doc-ēbo,	-ebis,	-ebit;	-ebīmus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i>	Doc-eam,	-eas,	-eat;	-eāmus,	-eatis,	-eant.
<i>Imp.</i>	Doc-ērem,	-eres,	-eret;	-erēmus,	-eretis,	-erent.
<i>Perf.</i>	Doc-uērim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerīmus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Doc-uīsem,	-uīsses,	-uīssset;	-uīssēmus,	-uīsssetis,	-uīsssent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Doc-uēro,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerīmus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i>	Doc-e vel -ēto,	-eto;	-ēte vel -etote,	-ento.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ēre.	<i>Pr.</i> Doc-ens.	Doc-endum,	1. Doc-tum.
<i>Perf.</i> Doc-uisse.	<i>Fut.</i> Doc-tūrus,	Doc-endi,	2. Doc-tu.
<i>Fut.</i> Esse docturus, -a, -um.		Doc-endo, &c.	
Fuisse docturus, -a, -um.			

PASSIVE VOICE.

Doceor, doctus, docēri, *To be taught.*

Indicative Mode.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Doc-eor, -ēris, vel -ēre,	-etur; -emur, -emini, -entur.
<i>Im.</i> Doc-ebat, -ebāris, vel -ebare,	-ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
<i>Perf.</i> Doctus sum vel fui, doctus es, vel fuisti, &c.	
<i>Plu.</i> Doctus eram v. fueram, doctus eras v. fueras, &c.	
<i>Fut.</i> Doc-ebor, -ebēris, vel -ebere,	-ebitur; -ebimur, -ebimini, -ebuntur.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Doc-eat, -eāris, vel -eare,	-eatur; -eamur, -eamini, -eantur.
<i>Im.</i> Doc-eret, -erēris, vel -erere,	-eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.
<i>Perf.</i> Doctus sim vel fuerim, doctus sis vel fueris, &c.	
<i>Plu.</i> Doctus essem v. fuissem, doctus esses v. fuisses, &c.	
<i>Fut.</i> Doctus fuero, doctus fueris, doctus fuerit, docti fuerimus, &c.	

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ēre vel -ētor, -etor;		-emini, -entor.	
<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Participles.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-eri,		<i>Perf.</i> Doc-tus, -a, -um.	
<i>Perf.</i> Esse vel fuisse doctus, -a, -um,		<i>Fut.</i> Doc endus, -a, -um.	
<i>Fut.</i> Doctum iri.			

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Lēgo, lēgi, lectum, lēgēre, *To read.*

Indicative Mode.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. 2. 3.	1. 2. 3.
<i>Pr.</i> Leg-o, -is, -it;	-imus, -itis, -unt.
Leg-ēbam, -ebas, -ebat;	
-ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant;	

Per. Lēg-ī, -īsti, -it; -īmus, -īstis, -ērunt, -ēre.
Plu. Lēg-ēram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.
Fut. Lēg-am, -es -et; -ēmus, -etis, -ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pres. Lēg-am, -as, -at; -amus, -atis, -ant.
Im. Lēg-ērem, -eres, -eret; -ērēmus, -eretis, -erent.
Per. Lēg-ērim, -eris, -erit; -erīmus, -eritis, -erint.
Plu. Lēg-isse, -isses -isset; -issemus, -issetis, -issent.
Fut. Lēg-ēro, -eris, -erit; -erīmus, -eritis, -erint.

Imperative Mode.

2. 3. 2. 3.
Pres. Lēg-ē vel -īto, -īto; -īte vel -ītōte, -unto.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Lēg-ēre, <i>Pr.</i> Lēg-ens.		Lēg-endum.	1. Lēc-tum.
<i>Perf.</i> Lēg-isse, <i>Fut.</i> Lēc-tūrus.		Lēg-endi.	2. Lēc-tu.
<i>Fut.</i> Eſſe lēc-tūrus, -a, -um.		Lēg-endo, &c.	
Fuiſſe lēc-turus, -a, -um.			

PASSIVE VOICE.

Lēgor, lēctus, lēgi, *To be read.*

Indicative Mode.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Lēg-or, -ēris, -ītur; -īmur, -imīni, -untor.	
<i>Im.</i> Lēg-ēbar, -ebaris, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.	
<i>Per.</i> Lēctus ſum vel fui, lēctus es vel fuiſti, &c.	
<i>Plu.</i> Lēctus eram vel fueram, lēctus eras vel fueras, &c.	
<i>Fut.</i> Lēgar, -ēris, -ētur; -ēmur, -emini, -entur.	

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Lēg-ar, -āris, -atur; -amur, -amini, -antur.
Im. Lēg-ērer, -erēris, -eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.
Perf. Lēctus ſim vel fuerim, lēctus ſis vel fueris, &c.
Plu. Lēctus eſſem v. fuiſſem, lēctus eſſes v. fuiſſes, &c.
Fut. Lēctus fuero, lēctus fueris, lēctus fuerit, &c.

Imperative Mode.

Pres. Lēg-ēre vel -ītor, -ītor; -imīni, -untor.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Leg-i.	<i>Perf.</i> Lec-tus, -a, -um.
<i>Perf.</i> Esse v. fuisse lectus, -a, -um.	<i>Fut.</i> Leg-endus, -a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i> Lectum iri.	

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audīvi, auditum, audīre, *To hear.**Indicative Mode.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. 2. 3.	1. 2. 3.
<i>Pr.</i> Aud-io, -is, -it;	<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iō, -itis, -iunt.
<i>Im.</i> Aud-iēbam, -iebas, -iebat;	<i>Im.</i> Aud-iēbamur, -iebatis, -iebant.
<i>Per.</i> Aud-īvi, -ivisti, -ivit;	<i>Per.</i> Aud-īvimus, -ivistis, -ivērunt, -ivēre.
<i>Pl.</i> Aud-ivēram, -iveras, -iverat;	<i>Pl.</i> Aud-ivēramus, -iveratis, -iverant.
<i>Fu.</i> Audiam, -ics, -ict;	<i>Fu.</i> Audiamus, -ictis, -ient.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iam, -ias, -iat;	<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iāmur, -iatis, -iant.
<i>Im.</i> Aud-irem, -ires, -iret;	<i>Im.</i> Aud-irēmur, -iretis, -irent.
<i>Per.</i> Aud-iverim, -iveris, -iverit;	<i>Per.</i> Aud-iverimus, -iveritis, -iverint.
<i>Pl.</i> Aud-ivissem, -ivisses, -ivisset;	<i>Pl.</i> Aud-ivissemus, -ivissetis, -ivissent.
<i>Fu.</i> Aud-ivero, -iveris, -iverit;	<i>Fu.</i> Aud-iverimus, -iveritis, -iverint.

Imperative Mode.

2. 3.	2. 3.
<i>Pres.</i> Aud-i, v. -ito, -ito;	<i>Pres.</i> Aud-ite, v. -itōte, -iunto.
<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Aud-ire.	<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iens. Aud-iendum.
<i>Per.</i> Aud-ivisse.	<i>Fu.</i> Aud-iturus. Aud-iendi.
<i>Fut.</i> Esse auditurus, -a, um,	Aud-iendo, &c.
Fuisse auditurus, -a, -um.	

PASSIVE VOICE.

Audior, audītus, audīri, *To be heard.**Indicative Mode.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Aud-ior, -iris, -itur;	<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iōr, -imur, -imīni, -iuntur.
<i>Im.</i> Aud-iēbar, -iebaris, -iebatur;	<i>Im.</i> Aud-iēbāmur, -iebamini, -iebantur.
<i>Perf.</i> Audītus sum vel fui, Auditus es v. fuisti, &c.	
<i>Plu.</i> Auditus eram v. fueram, Auditus eras v. fueras, &c.	
<i>Fut.</i> Aud-iar, -iēris, -ietur;	<i>Fut.</i> Aud-iāmur, -iemini, -ientur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Aud-iar, -iaris, -iatur; -iamur, -iamini, -iantur.
vel -iare,

Im. Aud-irer, -ireris, -iretur; -iremur, -iremini, -irentur.
vel -irere,

Perf. Auditus sim *vel* fuerim, auditus sis *v.* fueris, &c.

Plu. Auditus essem *v.* fuisset, auditus esses *v.* fuissets, &c.

Fut. Auditus fuero, auditus fueris, &c.

Imperative Mode.

Pr. Aud-ire, *vel* -itor, -itor; -imīni, -iuntor.
 2. 3. 2. 3.

Infinitive.

Participles.

Pr. Aud-iri.

Per. Aud-itus, a, -um.

Per. Esse *v.* fuisse aud-itus, -a, -um. *Fut.* Aud-iendus, -a, -um.

Fu. Aud-itum iri.

FORMATION OF VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *o* of the present, *i* of the perfect, *um* of the supine, and *re* of the infinitive.

1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.

2. From *i*; *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *ſſe*, and *ſſem*.

3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are formed from *um*.

4. All other parts from *re* do come; as, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*, *a*, *e*, and *i*; *ns* and *dus*; *dum*, *do*, and *di*; as, AM-*o*, -*em*; AM-AVI, -*eram*, -*erim*, -*iſſem*, -*ero*, -*iſſe*; AMAT-UM, -*u*, -*urus*, -*us*; AM-ARE, -*abam*, -*abo*, -*arem*, -*a*, -*ans*, -*andum*, *di*, *do*; -*andus*.

DOC-EO, -*cam*; DOC-UI, -*ueram*, &c.; DOCT-UM, -*u*, -*urus*, -*us*; DOC-ERE, -*ebam*, -*ebo*, -*erem*, -*e*, -*ens*, -*endum*, *di*, *do*, -*endus*.

LEG-*o*, -*am*; LEG-I, -*eram*, &c.; LECT-UM, -*u*, -*urus*, -*us*; LEG-ERE, -*ebam*, -*erem*, -*e*, -*ens*, -*endum*, &c.

AUD-IO, -*iam*; AUD-IVI, -*iveram*, &c.; AUDIT-UM, -*u*, -*urus*, -*us*; AUD-IRE, -*iebam*, -*irem*, -*i*, -*iens*, -*iendum*, *di*, *do*, -*iendus*.—So verbs of the third conjugation in *io*; as, CAP-IO, -*iam*; CEP-I, -*eram*, &c.; CAPT-UM, -*u*, &c.; CAP-ERE, -*iebam*, -*erem*, -*e*, -*iens*, -*iendum*, *di*, *do*, -*iendus*.

The passive voice is formed from the active, by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

A verb is commonly said to be conjugated, when only its principal parts are mentioned, because from them all the rest are derived.

The first person of the Present of the Indicative is called the *Theme* or the *Root* of the verb, because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

The letters of a verb which always remain the same, are called *Radical* letters; as, *am*, in *am-o*. The rest are called the *Termination*; as, *abamus*, in *am-abamus*.

All the letters which come before *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ĕre*, or *-ire*, of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting these before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

Signification of the Tenses in the various Modes.

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time: the other tenses express an action or passion completed; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love, or am loving; *amabam*, I loved, did love, or was loving, &c.

Amavi, I loved, did love, or have loved, *that is*, have done with loving, &c.

In like manner, in the passive voice; *Amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, or in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect; thus,

Indicative Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus sum*, I am or have been loved, or oftener, I was loved.

Amatus fui, I have been loved, or I was loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus eram*, I was or had been loved.

Amatus fueram, I had been loved.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus sim*, I may be or may have been loved.

Amatus fuissim, I may have been loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus essem*, I might, could, would, or should be or have been loved.

Amatus fuissim, I might, could, would, or should have been loved; or, I had been loved.

Future. *Amatus fuero*, I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mode, both active and passive; thus,

Amaturus sum, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, or I will love. We chiefly use this form, when some purpose or intention is signified.

Amatus ero, I shall be loved.

Obf. 1. The participles *amatus* and *amaturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obf. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amatus est*, he is or was loved, when applied to a man; *amata est*, she was loved, when applied to a woman; *amatum est*, it was loved, when applied to a thing; *amati sunt*, they were loved, when applied to men, &c. The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflexion of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obf. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amabam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amavi*: so *amor*, and *amatus sum*, I am loved; *amabar*, and *amatus eram*, I was loved; *amer*, and *amatus sim*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other, in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obf. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mode may be variously rendered, according to their connection with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quasi intelligant, qualis sit*, As if they understood, what kind of person he is. Cic. *In facinus jurasse putes*, You would think, &c. Ov. *Eloquar an fileam?* Shall I speak out, or be silent? *Nec vos arguerim, Teucri*, for *arguam*, Virg. *Si quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, for *peribo*, Ter. *Hunc tantum dolorem si sperare potui, et perferre potero*: for *potuissim* and *possem*, Virg. *Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? Id. *Prædiceres mihi*, you should have told me before hand, Ter. *At tu dictis, Albane, maneres*, ought to have stood to your word, Virg. *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, Juv. *Hauserit ensis*, The sword would have destroyed, Virg. *Fuerint irati*, Grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset*, If he did or should do that, Cic. The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive; as, *Animus meminisse borret*, *luctuque refugit*, for *refugit*, Virg. *Fuerat melius*, for *fuiisset*, Id. *Invidia dilapsa erat*, for *fuiisset*, Sall. *Quamdiu in portum venis?* for *venissi*, Plaut. *Quam mox navigo Ephefum*, for *navigabo*, Id. *Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*, Ter. for, *esses* and *sentires*. Cato *affirmat, se vivo, illum non triumphare*, for *triumphaturum esse*, Cic. *Persuadet Cassio, ut occuparet*, for *occupet*, Cæf.

Obf. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the indicative, is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciet* or *fecerit*, unless he do this. Ter.

Obf. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *valdeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And

Sto, stēti, statum, to stand. Its compounds have *stīti*, *stītum*, and oftener *stātum*; as, *præsto, præstiti, præstitum*, or *præstātum*, to excel. So *ex-*, *ad-*, *con-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-**sto*.

Exc. 2. *Lāvo, lāvi, lōtum, lautum, lāvātum*, to wash.

Pōto, pōtavi, pōtum, or *pōtātum*, to drink.

Jūvo, jūvi, jūtum, to help; fut. part. *juvaturus*. So *adjūvo*.

Exc. 3. *Cūbo, cūbui, cūbitum*, to ly. So *ac-*, *ex-*, *oc-*, *re-cūbo*. The other compounds insert an *m*, and are of the third conjugation.

Dōmo, dōmui, dōmitum, to subdue. So *e-*, *per-dōmo*.

Sōno, sōnui, sōnitum, to sound. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in*, *per*, *præ-*, *re-sōno*.

Tōno, tōnui, tōnitum, to thunder. So *at-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *superin-*, *re-tōno*. Horace has *intonātus*.

Vēto, vētui, vētitum, to forbid.

Crēpo, crēpui, crēpitum, to make a noise. So *con-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-crēpo*: *discrēpo* has rather *discrēpāvi*.

Exc. 4. *Frīco, frīcui, frīctum*, to rub. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-frīco*. But some of these have also *atum*.

Sēco, sēcui, sēctum, to cut. So *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re*, *sub-sēco*.

Nēco, necui, or *nēcavi, nēcātum*, to kill. So *inter-*, *e-nēco*: but these have oftener *ectum*; *enedum, interenedum*.

Mīco, mīcui, — to glitter. So *inter-*, *pro-mīco*. *Emīco*, has *emīcui, emīcātum*; *dimīco, dīmīcāvi, dimīcātum*, rarely *dimīcui*, to fight.

Exc. 5. These three want both pret. and sup. *lābo*, to fall or faint; *nexo*, to bind; and *plico*, to fold.

Plico compounded with a noun, or with the prepositions *re*, *sub*, has *āvi, ātum*; as, *duplīco, duplicāvi, duplicātum*, to double. So *multi-*, *sup-*, *re-plico*.

The other compounds of *plico* have either *āvi* and *ātum*, or *ui* and *itum*; as, *applīco, applicui, applicitum*, or *āvi, ātum*, to apply. So *im-*, *com-*, *plico*. *Explico*, to unfold, has commonly *explicui, explicitum*; but when it signifies to explain or interpret, *explicāvi, explicātum*.

Second Conjugation.

Verbs of the second conjugation have *ui* and *itum*; as, *habeo, habui, habītum*, to have.

Neuter verbs which have *ui* want the supine; as, *āreo*, *ārui*, to be dry.

But the neuter verbs which follow, together with their compounds, have the supine, and are regularly conjugated: *Vāleo*, to be in health; and *equi-*, *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *præ-* *vāleo*; *plāceo*, to please; and *com-*, *per-* *placeo*; *displāceo*, to displease: *Cāreo*, to want; *pāreo*, to appear, to obey; and *ap-*, *com* *pāreo*: *Jāceo*, to lie; and *ad-*, *circum-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *sub*, *super-* *jāceo*: *Cāleo*, to be warm; and *con-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-* *cāleo*: *nōceo*, to hurt; *dōleo*, to be grieved, and *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *per* *dōleo*: *Coāleo*, to grow together. *Līceo*, which in the active signifies, to be valued, to be lawful; and, what is singular, in the passive, to bid a price. *Lāteo*, to lurk, the compounds of which want the supine, *delīteo*, *inter-*, *sub-* *lateo*; as likewise do those of *tāceo*, *-cui*, *-cītum*, to be silent, *con-*, *ob-*, *re-* *tāceo*.

These three active verbs likewise want the supine: *Tīmeo*, to fear; *sīleo*, to conceal; *arceo*, to drive away: But the compounds of *arceo* have the supine; as, *exerceo*, *exercui*, *exercītum*, to exercise. So *co-erceo*, to restrain.

Exc. 1. The following verbs in *BEO* and *CEO*:

Jūbeo, *jussi*, *jussum*, to order. So *fide-jūbeo*, to bail or be surety for.

Sorbeo, *forbui*, *forptum*, to sup. So *ab-*, *ex-*, *re-* *forbeo*. We also find *absorpsi*, *exsorpsi*: *Exsorptum*, *resorptum*, are not in use.

Dōceo, *dōcui*, *doctum*, to teach. So *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *e-*, *per-*, *sub-* *dōceo*.

Misceo, *miscui*, *mixtum*, or *mixtum*, to mix. So *ad-*, *com-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *re-* *misceo*.

Mulceo, *mulsi*, *mulsum*, to stroak. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *com-*, *de-*, *per-*, *re-* *mulceo*.

Lūceo, *luxi*, — to shine. So *al-*, *circum-*, *col-*, *di-*, *e-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *per-*, or *pel-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *trans-* *lūceo*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs in *DEO*:

Prandeo, *prandi*, *pransum*, to dine.

Video, *vīdi*, *vīsum*, to see. So *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-* *video*.

H

Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, to sit. So *af-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, ob-, per-, pos-, præ-, re-, sub-sēdeo* : *Circumsēdeo*, or *circumsēdeo*, *supersēdeo*. But *de-, dis-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-sēdeo*, seem to want the supine.

Strīdeo, strīdi, — to make a noise.

Pendeo, pēpendi, pensum, to hang. So *de-, im-, pro-, super-pendeo*.

Mordeo, mōmordi, morsum, to bite. So *ad-, com-, de-, ob-, præ-, re-mordeo*.

Spondeo, spēpondi, sponsum, to promise. So *de-, re-spondeo*.

Tondeo, tōtondi, tonsum, to clip. So *at-, circum-, de-tondeo* ; but the compounds do not double the first syllable in the preterite ; thus, *attondi, &c.*

Rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum, to laugh. So *ar-, de-, ir-, sub-rīdeo*.

Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, to advise. So *dis-, per-suādeo*.

Ardeo, arsi, arsum, to burn. So *ex-, in-, ob-ardeo*.

Exc. 3. The following verbs in *GEO* :

Augeo, auxi, auctum, to increase. So *ad-, ex-augeo*.

Lūgeo, luxi, — to mourn. So *e-, pro-, sub-lūgeo*.

Frigeo, frixi, — to be cold. So *per-, re-frīgeo*.

Tergeo, terxi, tersum, to wipe. So *abs-, circum-, de-, ex-, per-tergeo*.

Mulgeo, mulsi, mulsum, or *mulctum*, to milk. So *e-, im-mulgeo*.

Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, to grant, to indulge.

Urgeo, urxi, — to press. So *ad-, ex-, in-, per-, sub-, super-urgeo*.

Fulgeo, fulsi, — to shine. So *af-, circum-, con-, ef-, inter-, præ-, re-, super-fulgeo*.

Turgeo, turxi, — to swell. *Algeo, alsi, —* to be cold.

Exc. 4. The following verbs in *IEO* and *LEO* :

Vīeo, vīēvi, vīctum, to bind with twigs, to hoop a vessel.

Cīeo, (cīvi) cītum, to rouse. So *ac-, con-, ex-, in-, per-cīeo*. *Cīvi* comes from *cīo* of the fourth conjugation.

Fleo, flēvi, flētum, to weep. So *af-, de-fleo*.

Compleo, complēvi, complētum, to fill. So the other compounds of *pleo* ; *de-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *adim-*, *op-*, *re-*, *sup-pleo*.
Dēleo, d. lēvi, dēlētum, to destroy, to blot out.

Oleo, to smell, has *ōlui, ōlītum*. So likewise its compounds which have a similar signification ; *ob-*, *per-*, *red-*, *sub-ōleo*. But such of the compounds as have a different signification make *ēvi* and *ētum* ; thus, *exōleo, exōlevi, exōlētum*, to fade. So *inōleo*, to grow into use ; *obsōleo*, to grow out of use ; *Abōleo*, to abolish, has *abōlēvi, abōlītum* ; and *adōleo*, to grow up, to burn, *adōlēvi, adul-tum*.

Exc. 5. Several verbs in *NEO*, *QUEO*, *REO*, and *SEO*.

Māneo, mansi, mansum, to stay. So *per-*, *re-maneo*.

Neo, nēvi, nētum, to spin. So *per-neo*.

Tēneo, tēnui, tentum, to hold. So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ob-*, *re-*, *suf-tēneo*. But *attēneo, pertēneo*, are not used in the supine ; and seldom *abstēneo*.

Torqueo, torxi, tortum, to throw. Thus, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *re-torqueo*.

Hareo, hēsi, hēsum, to stick. Thus, *ad-*, *con-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *sub-hareo*.

Torreo, torrii, tostum, to roast. So *extorreo*.

Censeo, censui, censum, to judge. So *ac-*, *per-*, *re-censeo*, to review ; *succenseo*, to be angry.

Exc. 6. Verbs in *VEO*, have *vi, tum* ; as, *mōveo, mōvi, mōtum*, to move ; *Fōveo, fovi, fōtum*, to cherish. So *con-*, *re-foveo*. So *vōveo*, to vow, or wish, and *de-voveo*.

Fāveo, to favour ; has *fāvi, fautum* ; and *cāveo*, to be-ware of, *cāvi, cautum*. So *prā-cāveo*.

Neuter verbs in *veo*, want the supine ; as, *pāveo, pā-vi*, to be afraid.

Ferveo, to boil, makes *ferbui*. So *de-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-serveo*.

Connīveo, to wink, has *connīvi* and *connixi*.

Exc. 7. The following verbs want both preterite and supine ; *Lacteo*, to suck milk ; *liveo*, to be black

and blue ; *scāteo*, to abound ; *renīdeo*, to shine ; *mæreo*, to be sorrowful ; *āveo*, to desire ; *polleo*, to be able ; *flāveo*, to be yellow ; *denſeo*, to grow thick ; *glabreo*, to be smooth or bare. To these add *calveo*, to be bald ; *cēveo*, to wag the tail ; *hebeo*, to be dull ; *urveo*, to be moist ; and some others.

Third Conjugation.

Verbs of the third conjugation form their preterite and supine variously, according to the termination of the present.

10.

1. *Fācio*, *fēci*, *factum*, to do, to make. So the compounds which retain *a* : *are-*, *cale-*, *made-*, *tepe-*, *bene-*, *male-*, *satis-fācio*, &c. But those compounded with a preposition which change *a* into *i*, have *ectum* ; as, *affācio*, *affēci*, *affectedum*. So *con-*, *de-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *of-*, *per-*, *prā-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *suf-fācio*.

Some compounds of *facio* are of the first conjugation ; as, *Amplifācio*, *sacrifācio*, *terrifācio*, *magnifācio* ; *gratifācor*, to gratify, or do a good turn, to give up ; *ludifācor*, to mock.

Jācio, *jēci*, *jaſtum*, to throw. So *ab-*, *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *ſub-*, *super-*, *superin-*, *tra-jācio* ; in the supine *-ectum*.

The compounds of *ſpēcio* and *lācio*, which themselves are not used, have *exi* and *ectum* ; as, *aſpēcio*, *aſpexi*, *aſpectum*, to behold. So *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *in-*, *intro-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *retro-*, *ſu-ſpēcio*.

Allācio, *allexi*, *alleſtum*, to allure. So *il-*, *pel-lācio* ; but *elācio* to draw out, has *elīcui*, *elīctum*.

2. *Fōdio*, *fōdi*, *foſſum*, to dig, to delve. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *prā-*, *re-*, *ſuf-*, *trans-fōdio*.

Fūgio, *fūgi*, *fugitum*, to fly. So *au-*, (for *ab-*) *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *ef-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *ſuf-*, *ſubter-*, *trans-fūgio*.

3. *Cāpio*, *cēpi*, *captum*, to take. So *ac-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *oc-*, *per-*, *prā-*, *re-*, *ſuf-cipio*, (in the supine *-ceptum* ;) and *ante-cāpio*.

Răpio, răpui, raptum, to pull or snatch. So *ab-, ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, præ-, pro-, sur-răpio; răpui, -reptum*.

Săpio, săpui, — to favour, to be wise. So *consipio*, to be well in one's wits; *desipio*, to be foolish; *resipio*, to come to one's wits.

Cūpio, cupīvi, cupitum, to desire. So *con-, dis-, per-cūpio*.

4. *Părio, pēperi, paritum*, or *partum*, to bring forth a child, to get. Its compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

Quătio, quassi, quassum, to shake: but *quassi* is hardly used. Its compounds have *cussi, cussum*, as, *concūtio, concussi, concussum*. So *de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-, reper-, suc-cūtio*.

UO has *ui, ūtum*; as,

Arguo, argui, argūtum, to shew, to prove, or argue, to reprove. So *co-, red-arguo*, to confute.—So,

Acuo, Exacuo, to sharpen.

Induo, to put on cloaths.

Exuo, to put off cloaths.

Imbuo, to wet or imbrue, to season or instruct.

Minuo, to lessen: *Com-, de-, di-, im-minuo*.

Spuo, to spit: *Con-, de-, ex-, in-spuo*.

Statuo, to set or place, to ordain:

Con-, de-, in-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-stituo.

Sternuo, to sneeze.

Suo, to sew or stitch, to tack together:

As-, circum-, con-, dis-, in-, præ-, re-suo.

Tribuo, to give, to divide: *At-, con-, dis-, re-tribuo*.

Exc. 1. *Fluo, fluxi, fluxum*, to flow. So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, subter-, super-, trans-fluo*.

Struo, struxi, strūctum, to put in order, to build. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, præ-, sub-, super-struo*.

Exc. 2. *Luo, lvi, luitum*, to pay, to wash away, to suffer punishment. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as, *ab-luo, ui, ūtum*, to wash away, to purify. So *al-, circum-, col-, de-, di-, e-, inter-, per-, pol-, pro-, sub-luo*.

Ruo, rui, ruitum, to rush, to fall. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as, *diruo, dirui, dirūtum*, to overthrow. So *e-, ob-, pro-, sub-ruo*. *Corruo*, and *irruo* want the supine; as likewise do *mētuo*, to fear; *pluo*, to rain; *ingruo*, to

affail; *congruo*, to agree; *respuo*, to reject; *annuo*, to assent; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb *nuo*; *abnuo*, to refuse; *innuo*, to nod or beckon with the head; *renuo*, to deny. *Respuo*, *respui*, to reject, to slight.

BO has *bi*, *bītum*; as,

Bibo, *bībi*, *bibītum*, to drink. So *ad-*, *com-*, *e-*, *im-*, *per-*, *præ-bībo*.

Exc. 1. *Scrībo*, *scripsi*, *scriptum*, to write. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *post-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-*, *supra-*, *trans-scrībo*.

Nūbo, *nupsi*, *nuptum*, to veil, to be married. So *de-*, *e-*, *in-*, *ob-nūbo*. Instead of *nupsi*, we often find *nupta sum*.

Exc. 2. The compounds of *cubo* in this conjugation insert an *m* before the last syllable; as, *accumbo*, *accūbui*, *accūbītum*, to sit down at table. So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *in-*, *oc-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *fac-*, *superin-cumbo*.

These two verbs want the supine; *scābo*, *scābi*, to scratch; *lambo*, *lambi*, to lick. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *præ-lambo*.

Glūbo and *deglūbo*, to strip, to flay, want both preterite and supine.

CO.

1. *Dico*, *dixi*, *dictum*, to say. So *ab-*, *ad-*, *con-*, *contra-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *pro-dīco*.

Dūco, *duxi*, *ductum*, to lead. So *ab-*, *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *e-*, *in-*, *intro-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *tra-*, or *trans-dūco*.

2. *Vinco*, *vīci*, *viētum*, to overcome. So *con-*, *de-*, *e-*, *per-*, *re-vinco*.

Parco, *pēperci*, *parsum*, seldom *parsi*, *parsitum*, to spare. So *com-parco*, or *com-perco*, which is seldom used.

Ico, *īci*, *ictum*, to strike.

SCO has *vi*, *tum*; as,

Nosco, *nōvi*, *nōtum*, to know; fut. part. *nosciturus*. So *Disgnosco*, to distinguish; *ignosco*, to pardon; also *inter-*, *per-*, *præ-* *nosco*. *Cresco*, to grow: *Con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *re-*, and without the supine, *ac-*, *in-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *fac-*, *super-cresco*.

Quiesco, *to rest* ; ac-, con-, inter-, *to vote, to commit* ; also præ-, re-
re-quiesco. scisco ; descisco, *to revolt*.

Scisco, *to ordain* ; ad-, or ascisco, Suesco, *to be accustomed* ; al-, con-,
to take to, to associate ; conscisco, de-, in-suesco.

Exc. 1. Agnosco, agnōvi, agnītum, *to own* ; cognosco, cognōvi, cognītum, *to know*. So recognosco, *to review*.

Pasco, pāvi, pastum, *to feed*. So com-, de-pasco.

Exc. 2. *The following verbs want the supine.*

Disco, didīci, *to learn*. So ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, præ-disco.

Posco, pōposci, *to demand*. So ap-, de-, ex-, re-posco.

Compesco, compescui, *to stop or restrain*. So dispesco, dispescui, *to separate*.

Exc. 3. Glisco, *to grow* ; fatisco, *to be weary* ; and likewise inceptive verbs want both preterite and supine ; as, arefco, *to become dry*. But these verbs borrow the preterite and supine from their primitives ; as, ardesco, *to grow hot*, arsi, arsum, *from ardeo*.

DO has di, sum ; as,

Scando, scandi, scarsum, *to climb* ; ēdo, ēdi, ēsum, *to eat*.

So,

Ascendo, *to mount*. Cūdo, *to forge, to stamp* Mando, *to chew* : Præ-,
Descendo, *to go down* : or coin ; Ex-, in-, re-mando.

Con-, e-, ex-, in-, per-, pro-, re-cūdo. Prehendo, *to take hold*
tran-scendo. Defendo, *to defend*. of : Ap-, com-, de-

Accendo, *to kindle* : Offendo, *to strike a* prehendo.

In-, suc-cendo. gainst, *to offend*.

Exc. 1. dīvidō, dīvīsi, divīsum, *to divide*.

Rādo, rāsi, rāsum, *to shave*. So ab-, circum-, cor-, de-, ē-,
inter-, præ-; sub-rādo.

Claudo, clausi, clausum, *to close*. So circum-, con-, dis-,
ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, præ-, re-, se-clūdo.

Plaudo, plausi, plausum, *to clap hands for joy*. So ap-,
circum-plaudo : also com-, dis-, ex-, sup-plōdo.

Lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, *to play*. So ab-, al-, col-, de-, e-, il-,
inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-, re-lūdo.

Trūdo, trūsi, trūsum, *to thrust*. So abf-, con-, de-, ex-, in-,
ob-, pro-, re-trūdo.

Lædo, læsi, læsum, to hurt. So *al-, col-, e-, il-lido*.

Rôdo, rôsi, rôsum, to gnaw. So *ab-, ar-, circum-, cor-, de-, e-, ob-, per-, præ-rôdo*.

Vado, to go, wants both preterite and supine: but its compounds have *si, sum*; as, *invado, invâsi, invâsum*, to invade, or fall upon. So *circum-, e-, super-vado*.

Cêdo, cessi, cessum, to yield. So *abf-, ac-, ante-, con-, de-, dif-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-, re-, retro-, se-, suc-cêdo*.

Exc. 2. *Pando, pandi, passum*, and sometimes *pansum*, to open, to spread. So *dif-, ex-, op-, præ-, re-pando*.

Comêdo, comêdi, comêsum, or *comestum*, to eat. But *êdo* itself and the rest of its compounds have always *êsum*; as, *ad-, amb-, ex-, per-, sub-, super-êdo*.

Fundo, fûdi, fûsum, to pour fourth. So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, super-, superin-, transf-fundo*.

Scindo, scîdi, scissum, to cut. So *af-, circum-, con-, ex-, inter-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, tran-scindo*.

Findo, fidi, fissum, to cleave. So *con-, dif-, in-findo*.

Exc. 3. *Tundo, tûtûdi, tunsum*, and sometimes *tûsum*, to beat. The compounds have *tûdi, tûsum*; as, *contundo, contûtûdi, contûsum*, to bruise. So *ex-, ob-, per-, re-tundo*.

Cûdo, cêcîdi, câsum, to fall. The compounds want the supine; as, *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, inter-, pro-, suc-cido*: except *incido, incîdi, incâsum*, to fall in; *recido, recîdi, recâsum*, to fall back; and *occido, occîdi, occâsum*, to fall down.

Cædo, cêcîdi, cæsum, to cut, to kill. The compounds change *æ* into *i* long; as, *accido, accîdi, accîsum*, to cut about. So *abf-, con-, circum-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, re-, succido*.

Tendo, têtendî, tensum, or *tentum*, to stretch out. So *at-, con-, de-, dif-, ex-, ob-, præ-, pro-tendo*. But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *ostendo*, which has commonly *ostensum*.

Pêdo, pêpêdi, peditum, to break wind backwards. So *op-pêdo*.

Pendo, pêpendî, pensum, to weigh. So *ap-, de-, dif-, ex-, im-, per-, re-, suf-pendo*.

Exc. 4. The compounds of *do* have *dīdi*, and *dītum*; as, *abdo*, *abdīdi*, *abdītum*, to hide. So *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *red-*, *sub-*, *trādo*: also *decon-*, *recon-* *do*: and *coad-*, *superad-* *do*: and *deper-*, *disper-* *do*. To these add *crēdo*, *crēdīdi*, *crēdītum*, to believe; *vendo*, *vendīdi*, *vendītum*, to sell. *Abscondo*, to hide, has *abscondi*, *abscondītum*, rarely *abscondīdi*.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine; *strīdo*, *strīdi*, to creak; *rūdo*, *rūdi*, to bray like an ass; and *sīdo*, *sīdi*, to sink down. The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and supine from *sēdeo*; as, *consīdo*, *consēdi*, *confessum*, to sit down. So *af-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-*, *sub-* *sīdo*.

Note. Several compounds of verbs in *do* and *deo*, in some respects resemble one another, and therefore should be carefully distinguished; as, *concīdo*, *concēdo*, *concīdo*; *consīdo* and *consīdeo*; *conscīdo*, *conscēdo*, &c.

GO, GUO has *xi*, *sum*; as,

Rēgo, *rexī*, *reſum*, to rule, to govern; *dirīgo*, *-exī*, *-eſum*, to direct; *arrigo*, *erigo*, *-exī*, *-eſum*, to raise up; *corrigo*, to correct; *porrigo*, to stretch out; *subrigo*, to raise up. So

Cingo, *cinxi*, *cinſum*, to gird, to emungo, to wipe, to cheat.

ſurround: *Ac-*, *diſ-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *Plango*, to beat, to lament.

præ-, *re-*, *ſuc-* *cingo*.

Fligo, to daſh or beat upon: *Af-*, *extinguiſh*: *Di-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *con-*, *in-*, *fligo*: alſo *profligo*, *præ-*, *re-* *ſtinguo*.

to rout, of the firſt conj.

Jungo, to join; *abjungo*, to ſeparate: *Ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ſe-*, *sub-* *jungo*.

Lingo, to lick: *de-*, *e-* *lingo*; and *pollingo*, to anoint a dead body.

Mungo, to wipe or clean the noſe:

Tēgo, to cover: *Circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-* *tēgo*.

Tingo, or *Tinguo*, to dip or dye:

Con-, *in-* *tingo*.

Ungo, or *unguo*, to anoint: *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *super-* *ungo*.

Exc. 1. *Surgo*, to riſe, has *ſurrexi*, *ſurreſum*. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *re-* *ſurgo*.

Pergo, *perrexi*, *perreſum*, to go forward.

Stringo, *ſtrinxi*, *ſtriſum*, to bind, to ſtrain, to lop. So *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-* *ſtringo*.

Fingo, *finxi*, *fiſum*, to feign. So *af-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *re-* *ſingo*.

Pingo, *pinxi*, *piſum*, to paint. So *ap-*, *de-* *pingo*.

Exc. 2. Frango, frēgi, fractum, *to break*. So con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-fringo.

Ago, ēgi, actum, *to do, to drive*. So ab-, ad-, ex-, red-, sub-, trans-, transfad-igo : and circum-, per-āgo ; cōgo, *for coāgo*.

These three compounds of āgo want the supine : satāgo, satēgi, to be busy about a thing ; prodīgo, prodēgi, to lavish, or spend riotously ; dēgo for deāgo ; dēgi, to live or dwell. Ambīgo, to doubt, also wants the preterite.

Lēgo, lēgi, lectum, *to gather, to read*. So al-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-lēgo : also col-, de-, e-, recol-, se-līgo, *which change e into i*.

Dilīgo, *to love, has dilexi, dilectum*. So negligo, *to neglect ; and intelligo, to understand ; but negligo has sometimes negligi, Sall. Jug. 40.*

Exc. 2. Tango, tētīgi, tactum, *to touch*. So at-, con-, ob-, per-tingo.

Pungo, pūpūgi, punctum, *to prick*. The compounds have punxi ; as, compungo, compunxi, compunctum. So dif-, ex-, inter-pungo : but repungo has repunxi or repūpūgi.

Pango, panxi, pactum, *to fix, to drive in, to compose : or pēpūgi, which comes from the obsolete verb pāgo, to bargain, for which we use paciscor*. The compounds of pango, have pēgi ; as compingo, compēgi, compactum, *to put together*. So im-, op-, sup-pingo.

Exc. 4. Spargo, sparxi, sparsum, *to spread*. So ad-, circum-, con-, di-, in-, inter-, per-, pro-, re-spergo.

Mergo, merxi, mersum, *to dip, or plunge*. So de-, e-, im-, sub-mergo.

Tergo, terxi, tersum, *to wipe or clean*. So abs-, de-, ex-, per-tergo.

Figo, fixi, fixum, *to fix or fasten*. So af-, con-, de-, in-, of-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-, trans-fīgo.

Frīgo, frixi, frixum, or frictum, *to fry*.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine ; clangō, clānxi, *to sound a trumpet ; ningo or ninguo, ninxi, to snow ; angō, anxī, to vex. Vergo, to incline or lie towards, wants both preterite and supine*. So e-, de-, in-vergo.

HO, JO.

1. Trāho, traxi, tractum, *to draw*. So abs-, at-, circum-, con-, de-, dif-, ex-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-trāho.

Vēho, vëxi, vēctum, to carry. So a-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, e-, in-, per-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, trans-vēho.

2. **Mejo, or mingo, minxi, miētum, to make water.** So **immejo.**

LO.

1. **Cōlo, cōlui, cultum, to adorn, to inhabit, to honour, to till.** So ac-, circum-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-cōlo : and like-wise **occūlo, occului, occultum, to hide.**

Consūlo, consului, consultum, to advise, to consult.

Alo, alui, alitum, or contracted altum, to nourish.

Mōlo, molui, molitum, to grind. So com-, e-, per-mōlo.

The compounds of cello, which itself is not in use, want the supine ; as, ante-, ex-, præ-cello, -cellui, to excel. Percello, to astonish, has percūli, percultum.

Pello, pēpūli, pulsūm, to thrust. So ap-, af-, com-, de-, dif-, ex-, im-, per-, pro-, re-pello ; appūli, &c.

Fallo, fēfelli, falsūm, to deceive. But **refello, refelli, to confute, wants the supine.**

3. **Vello, velli, or vulsi, vulsūm, to pull or pinch.** So a-, con-, e-, inter-, præ-, re-vello. But de-, di-, per-vello, have rather velli.

Sallo, falli, falsūm, to salt. Psallo, psalli,——to play on a musical instrument.

Tollo, to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to itself, makes sustūli and sublātum ; Extollo, extūli, elātum ; but attollo, to take up, has neither preterite nor supine.

MO has ui, itum ; as,

Gēmo, gēmui, gemitūm, to groan. So ag-, circum-, con-, in-, re-gemo.

Frēmo, fremui, fremitūm, to rage or roar. So af-, circum-, con-, in-, per-fremo.

Vōmo, evōmo, ui, -itum, to vomit or spew, to cast up.

Exc. 1. Dēmo, dempsi, demptum, to take away.

Prōmo, prompsi, promptum, to bring out. So de-, ex-prōmo.

Sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, to take. So ab-, af-, con-, de-, in-, præ-, re-, tran-sūmo.

Cōmo, compsi, comptum, to deck or dress.

These verbs are also used without the p ; as, demsi, demtum ; sumsi, sumtum, &c.

Exc. 2. Emo, ēmi, emptum, *to buy*. So ad-, dir-, ex-, inter-, per-, red-īmo and co-ēmo.

Prēmo, preſſi, preſſum, *to preſs*. So ap-, com-, de-, ex-, im-, op-, per-, re-, ſup-prīmo.

Trēmo, trēmui, *to tremble, wants the ſupine*. So at-, circum-, con-, in-trēmo.

NO.

1. Pōno, pōſui, pōſitum, *to put or place*. So ap-, ante-, circum-, com-, de-, diſ-, ex-, im-, inter-, op-, poſt-, præ-, pro-, re-, ſe-, ſup-, ſuper-, ſuperim-, tranſ-pōno.

Gigno, gēnui, gēnītum, *to beget*. So con-, e-, in-, per-, pro-, re-gigno.

Cāno, cēcīni, cantum, *to ſing** But the compounds have cinui and centum; as, accīno, accīnui, accentum, *to ſing in concert*. So con-, in-, præ-, ſuc-cīno; oc-cīno and oc-cāno; re-cīno and re-cāno.

Tempno, tempſi, temptum, *to deſpiſe*. So conternno: But the preterite and ſupine of the ſimple verb are ſcarcely uſed.

2. Sperno, ſprēvi, ſprētum, *to diſdain or ſlight*. So deſperno.

Sterno, ſtrāvi, ſtrātum, *to lay flat, to ſrow*. So ad-, con-, in-, præ-, pro-, ſub-ſterno.

Sīno, ſīvi, or ſii, ſitum, *to permit*. So deſīno, deſīvi, oſtēner deſīi, deſītum, *to leave off*.

Līno, livi, or lēvi, lītum, *to anoint or daub*. So al-, circum-, col-, de-, il-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, re-, ſub-, ſubter-, ſuper-, ſuperil-līno.

Cerno, crēvi, ſeldom crētum, *to ſee, to decree, to enter upon an inheritance*. So de-, diſ-, ex-, in-, ſe-cerno.

PO, QUO.

Verbs in po have *psi* and *ptum*; as, Carpo, carpsī, carptum, *to pluck or pull, to crop, to blame*.—So con-, de-, diſ-, ex-, præ-cerpo.

Clēpo, *to ſteal*.

Rēpo, *to creep*: Ad-, cor-, de-, di-,

Scalpo, *to ſcratch or engrave*. So circum-, ex-scalpo.

e-, ir-, intro-, ob-, per-, pro-, ſculpo, *to grave or carve*. So ex-, ſub-rēpo. in-sculpo.

Serpo, *to creep as a ſerpent*.

Exc. 1. Strēpo, ſtrēpui, ſtrēpitum, *to make a noiſe*. So ad-, circum-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-ſtrēpo.

Exc. 2. *Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum*, to break. So *ab-, cor-, di-, e-, inter-, intro-, ir-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-rumpo*.

There are only two simple verbs ending in *QUO*, viz.

Cōquo, coxi, coctum, to boil. So *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-cōquo*.

Linqo, liqui, — to leave. The compounds have *lictum*; as, *relinquo, reliqui, relictum*, to forsake. So *de-*, and *dere-linqo*.

RO.

1. *Quero* makes *quasīvi, quasitum*, to seek. So *ac-, an-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-quīro*.

Tēro, trivi, tritum, to wear, to bruise. So *at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, sub-tēro*.

Verro, verri, versum, to sweep, brush, or make clean. So *a-, con-, de-, e-, præ-, re-verro*.

Uro, ussi, ustum, to burn. So *ad-, amb-, comb-, de-, ex-, in-, per-, sub-ūro*.

Gēro, gessi, gestum, to carry. So *ag-, con-, di-, in-, pro-, re-, sug-gēro*.

2. *Curro, cūcurri, cursum*, to run. So *ac-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, oc-, per-, præ-, pro-curro*, which sometimes double the first syllable, and sometimes not; as, *accurri*, or *accūcurri*, &c. *Circum-, re-, suc-, trans-curro*, hardly ever redouble the first syllable.

3. *Sēro, sēvi, sātum*, to sow. The compounds which signify *planting* or *sowing*, have *sēvi, sītum*; as, *consēro, consevi, consitum*, to plant together. So *af-, circum-, de-, dis-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, re-, sub-, transēro*.

Sēro, to knit, had anciently *sērui, fertum*, which its compounds still retain; as, *asēro, asserui, assertum*, to claim. So *con-, circum-, de-, dis-, edis-, ex-, in-, intr-sēro*.

4. *Fūro*, to be mad, wants both preterite and supine.

SO has *sīvi*, *sītum* ; as,

Arcesso, *arcessīvi*, *arcessītum*, to call or send for. So *capeſſo*, to take ; *faceſſo*, to do, to go away ; *laceſſo*, to provoke.

Exc. 1. *Vīſo*, *vīſi*, — to go to see, to viſit. So *in-*, *re-vīſo*. *Inceſſo*, *inceſſi*, — to attack, to ſeize.

Exc. 2. *Depſo*, *depſui*, *depſum*, to knead. So *con-*, *per-depſo*.

Piſo, *piſui*, or *piſi*, *piſum*, *piſum*, or *piſītum*, to bake.

TO.

1. *Flecto* has *flexi*, *flexum*, to bow. So *circum-*, *de-*, *in-*, *re-*, *retro-flecto*.

Plecto, *plexi*, and *plexui*, *plexum*, to plait. So *implecto*.

Necto, *nexi*, and *nexui*, *nexum*, to tie or knit. So *an-*, *con-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *sub-necto*.

Pecto, *pexi*, and *pexui*, *pexum*, to dress or comb. So *de-*, *ex-*, *re-pecto*.

2. *Mecto*, *meſſui*, *meſſum*, to reap, mow, or cut down. So *de-*, *e-*, *præ-mecto*.

3. *Pecto*, *petīvi*, *petītum*, to ſeek, to purſue. So *ap-*, *com-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *op-*, *re-*, *ſup-pecto*.

Mitto, *miſi*, *miſſum*, to ſend. So *a-*, *ad-*, *com-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *o-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *præter-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-*, *trans-mitto*.

Verto, *verti*, *verſum*, to turn. So *a-*, *ad-*, *animad-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *præter-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *trans-vertō*.

Sterto, *ſtētui*, — to ſnore. So *de-ſterto*.

4. *ſiſto*, an active verb, to ſtop, has *ſtiti*, *ſtātum* : but *ſiſto*, a neuter verb, to ſtand ſtill, has *ſtēti*, *ſtatum*, like *ſto*. The compounds have *ſtiti*, and *ſtitum* ; as, *aſſiſto*, *aſtiti*, *aſtitum*, to ſtand by. So *ab-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-*, *sub-ſiſto*. But the compounds are ſeldom uſed in the ſupine.

VO, XO.

There are three verbs in *vo*, which are thus conjugated :

1. *Vīvo, vixi, victum*, to live. So *ad-, con-, per-, pro-, re-, super-vīvo*.

Solvo, solvi, solutum, to loose. So *ab-, dis-, ex-, per-, re-solvo*.

Volvo, volvi, volutum, to roll. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, e-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-volvo*.

2. *Texo*, the only verb of this conjugation ending in *xo*, has *texui, textum*, to weave. So *at-, circum-, con-, de-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-texo*.

Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in *īvi*, and the supine in *itum* ; as,

Mūnio, mūnīvi, mūnitum, to fortify.

Exc. 1. *Singultio, singultīvi, singultum*, to sob.

Sepelio, sepēli-vi, sepultum, to bury.

Vēnio, veni, ventum, to come. So *ad-, ante-, circum-, con-, contra-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, intro-, ob-, per-, post-, præ-, re-, sub-, super-vēnio*.

Vēneo, vēnii, — to be sold.

Sālio, sālui, and sālii, saltum, to leap. The compounds have commonly *sīlui*, sometimes *filii* or *sīlīvi*, and *sultum* ; as, *transīlio, transīlui, transīlii*, and *transīlivi, transfultum*, to leap over. So *ab-, af-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, re-, sub-, super-sīlio*.

Exc. 2. *Amicio* has *amicui, amictum*, seldom *amixi*, to cover or clothe.

Vincio, vinxi, victum, to tie. So *circum-, de-, e-, re-vincio*.

Sancio, sanxi, sanctum ; and *sancīvi, sancitum*, to establish or ratify.

Exc. 3. *Cambio, campsi, campsum*, to change money.

In the Second Conjugation,

Mereor, to *deserve*.Polliceor, to *promise*.Tutor, to *defend*.Licēor, to *bid at an auction*.

In the Third Conjugation,

Amplector, complector, to *embrace*.Revertor, to *return*.

In the Fourth Conjugation,

Blandior, to *sooth*.Partior, to *divide*.Mentior, to *lie*.Sortior, to *draw or cast lots*.Molior, to *attempt something difficult*.Largior, to *give liberally*.There are no exceptions in the *First Conjugation*.

EXCEPTIONS in the Second Conjugation.

Reor, rātus, to *think*.Misereor, misertus, or not contracted miseritus, to *pity*.

Fāteor, fassus, to *confess*. The compounds of fāteor have fessus; as, profūteor, professus, to *profess*. So confīteor, to *confess*, to *own or acknowledge*.

EXCEPTIONS in the Third Conjugation.

Lābor, lapsus, to *slide*. So al-, col-, de-, di-, e-, il-, inter-, per-, prater-, pro-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, transf-lābor.

Ulciscor, ultus, to *revenge*.Utor, ūsus, to *use*. So ab-, de-ūtor.

Lōquor, lōquūtus, or locūtus, to *speak*. So al-, col-, circum-, e-, inter-, ob-, prae-, pro-lōquor.

Sequor-, sēquutus, or sēcutus, to *follow*. So af-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub sēquor.

Quēror, questus, to *complain*. So con-, inter-, prae-quēror.

Nitor, nīsus or nixus, to *endeavour, to lean upon*. So an-, con-, e-, in-, ob-, re-, sub-nitor: but the compounds have oftener nixus.

Pāciscor, pāctus, to *bargain*. So de-pāciscor.

Grādior, gressus, to *go*. So ag-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, prae-, prater-, pro-, re-, retro-, sug-, super-transf-grēdior.

Profīciscor, profectus, to *go a journey*.Nanciscor, nactus, to *get*.

Pätior, passus, to suffer. So per-pätior.

Apiscor, aptus, to get. So adipiscor, adeptus, and indipiscor, indeptus.

Commüniscor, commentus, to devise or invent.

Fruor, fructus, or fructus, to enjoy. So per-fruor.

Obliviscor, oblitus, to forget.

Expergiscor, experrectus, to awake.

Mörior, mortuus, to die. So com-, de-, e-, im-, inter-, præ mörior.

Nascor, natus, to be born. So ad-, circum-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, re-, sub-nascor.

Orior, ortus, öriri, to rise. So ab-, ad-, co-, ex-, ob-, sub-örior.

The three last form the future participle in *itürus* ; thus, *möritürus, nascitürus, örütürus.*

EXCEPTIONS in the Fourth Conjugation.

Mëtior, mensus, to measure. So ad-, com-, di-, e-, præ-, re-mëtior.

Ordior, orsus, to begin. So ex-, red ordior.

Expërior, expertus, to try.

Oppërior, oppertus, to wait or tarry for one.

The following verbs want the participle perfect.

Vescor, vesci, to feed

Prævertor, præverti, to get before,

Liquor, liqui, to melt or be dissolved. to outrun.

Mëdeor, mederi, to heal.

Diffitor, diffiteri, to deny.

Remüniscor, reminisci, to remember. Divertor, diverti, to turn aside, to

Irascor, irasci, to be angry. take lodging.

Ringor, ringi, to grin like a dog.

Defëtiscor, defëtisci, to be weary, or faint.

The verbs which do not fall under any of the foregoing rules are called *Irregular.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

The irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight ; *sum, eo, queo, völo, nölo, mälo, fëro, and fio*, with their compounds.

But properly there are only six ; *nölo* and *mälo* being compounds of *völo*.

Sum has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-, ab-, de-, inter-, præ-, ob-, sub-, super-sum* ; and *insum*, which wants the preterite.

Prosum, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e*; as,
Ind. Pr. Pro-sum, prod-es, prod-est; pro-sūmus, &c.

Im. Prod-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat; prod-eramus, &c.

Sub. Im. Prod-essem, prod-esses, prod-esset; prod-essemus, &c.

Imperat. Prod-esto, prod-este. *Infinit. Pres.* Prod-esse.

Possūm is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum*; and is thus conjugated:

Possūm, pōtui, posse, *To be able.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Possūm, potes, potest; pos-sūmus, potestis, possunt.

Im. Pot-eram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.

Per. Pot-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.

Plu. Pot-uēram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.

Fut. Pot-ēro, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Pos-sim, -sis, -sit; -sīmus, -sitis, -sint.

Im. Pos-sem, -ses, -set; -sēmus, -setis, -sent.

Per. Pot-uērim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Plu. Pot-uissēm, -uisses, -uisset; -uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent.

Fut. Pot-uēro, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Infinitive.

Pres. Possē. *Per.* Potuisse. *The rest wanting.*

Eo, īvi, itum, īre, *To go.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. *Eo*, is, it; īmus, itis, eunt.

Imp. Ibam, ibas, ibat; ibamus, ibatis, ibant.

Per. Ivi, ivisti, ivit; ivimus, ivistis, iverunt, iverē.

Plu. Iveram, iveras, iverat; iveramus, iveratis, iverant.

Fut. Ibo, ibis, ibit; ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Eam, eas, eat; eamus, eatis, eant.

Im. Irem, ires, iret; iremus, iretis, irent.

Per. Iverim, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.

Plu. Ivissem, ivisses, ivisset; ivissemus, ivissetis, ivissent.

Fut. Ivero, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.

<i>Imperative.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i> { I, ito ;	{ ite, eunto.	<i>Pres.</i> Ire.	
	{ itote,	<i>Perf.</i> Ivissē.	
		Esse iturus, a, um.	
		Fuisse iturus.	
<i>Participles.</i>		<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Iens, Gen. euntis.		Eundum.	1. Itum.
<i>Fut.</i> Iturus, -a, -um.		Eundi.	2. Itu.
		Eundo, &c.	

The compounds of *eo* are conjugated after the same manner ; *ad-, ab-, ex-, ob-, red-, sub-, per-, co-, in-, præ-, ante-, prod-eo* : So likewise *veneo, -ii*, (of *venum* a sale, and *eo*) to be sold. But *ambio*, to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

In the tenses formed from the perfect, the compounds are usually contracted ; as, *adii, adiissi* or *adiisti, adieram, adierim, &c.*

Eo, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form ; thus, *it*, he is going ; *ivit*, he is gone ; *ivērat*, he was gone ; *ivērit*, he may be gone, or shall be gone. So *vēnit*, he is coming ; *vēnit*, he is come ; *vēnērat*, he was come, &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are only used impersonally ; as, *itur ab illo*, he is going ; *ventum est ab illis*, they are come. We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally ; as *pericula adeuntur*, are undergone, Cic. *Libri sibyllini aditi sunt*, were looked into. Liv. *Flumen pedibus transiri potest*. Cæsar. *Inimicitia subeantur*. Cic.

QUEO, I can, and *NEQUEO*, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo* ; only they want the imperative and the gerunds ; and the participles are seldom used.

Volo, völuī, velle, To will, or to be willing.

Indicative Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Vol-o,	vis,	vult ;	volūmus,	-vultis,	-volunt.
<i>Im.</i> Vol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat ;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Per.</i> Vol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit ;	-uimus,	-uistis,	-uerunt, -vere.
<i>Pl.</i> Vol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat ;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
<i>Fu.</i> Vol-am,	-es,	-et ;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Velim,	velis,	velit;	velimus,	velitis,	velint.
<i>Im.</i> Vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellēmus,	velletis,	vellent.
<i>Per.</i> Vol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i> Voluissē,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
<i>Fut.</i> Vol-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

*Infinitive.**Participle.*

<i>Pres.</i> Velle.	<i>Perf.</i> Voluisse.	<i>Pres.</i> Volens.
---------------------	------------------------	----------------------

*The rest not used.*Nōlo, nolui, nolle. *To be unwilling.**Indicative Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i> Nōlo,	non-vis,	non-vult;	nolumus,	non-vultis,	nolunt.
<i>Im.</i> Nol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Per.</i> Nol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uistis,	-uerunt,
					-uere.
<i>Plu.</i> Nol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
<i>Fut.</i> Nolam,	-noles,	-nolet;	nolemus,	noletis,	-nolent.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Nolim,	nolis,	nolit;	nolimus,	nolitis,	nolint.
<i>Im.</i> Nollem,	nolles,	nollet;	nollemus,	nolletis,	nollent.
<i>Per.</i> Nol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i> Nol-uissē,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
<i>Fut.</i> Nol-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

*Imperative.**Infinitive.**Participle.*

<i>Pr.</i> { Noli,	{ nolite,	<i>Pr.</i> Nolle.	<i>Pr.</i> Nolens.
{ Nolito;	{ nolitote.	<i>Per.</i> Noluissē.	<i>The rest wanting.</i>

Mālo, mālui, malle, *To be more willing.**Indicative Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i> Mal-o,	mavis,	mavult;	malūmus,	mavultis,	malunt.
<i>Im.</i> Mal-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Per.</i> Mal-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uistis,	-uerunt.
					-uere.
<i>Plu.</i> Mal-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
<i>Fut.</i> Mal-am,	-es,	-et, &c.	<i>This is scarcely in use.</i>		

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Malim,	malis,	malit;	malimus,	malitis,	malint.
<i>Im.</i> Mallem,	malles,	mallet;	mallemus,	malletis,	mallent.
<i>Per.</i> Mal-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i> Mal-uissē,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
<i>Fut.</i> Mal-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Infinitive Mode.

Pres. Malle. *Perf.* Maluisse. *The rest not used.*

Fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, *To bring or suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Fĕro,	fers,	fert ;	ferĭmus,	fertis,	ferunt.
<i>Im.</i> Fer-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat ;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Per.</i> Tuli,	tulisti,	tulit ;	tulimus,	tulistis,	tulerunt, -ere.
<i>Plu.</i> Tul-eram,	-eras,	-erat ;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.
<i>Fut.</i> Feram,	feres,	feret ;	feremus,	feretis,	ferent.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Feram,	feras,	ferat ;	feramus,	feratis,	ferant.
<i>Im.</i> Ferrem,	ferres,	ferret ;	ferremus,	ferretis,	ferrent.
<i>Per.</i> Tul-erim,	-eris,	-erit ;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.
<i>Plu.</i> Tul-isse,	-isses,	-isset ;	-issemus,	-issetis,	-issent.
<i>Fut.</i> Tul-ero,	-eris,	-erit ;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

<i>Pr.</i> { Fer,	ferto :	{ ferte,	ferunto.	<i>Pr.</i> Ferre.
{ Ferto,		{ fertote,		<i>Per.</i> Tulisse.
				<i>Fut.</i> Eſſe laturus, a, um.
				Fuiſſe laturus, a, umq.

Participles.

Gerunds.

Supines.

<i>Pres.</i> Ferens.	Ferendum.	1. Lātum.
<i>Fut.</i> Laturus, -a, -um.	Ferendi.	2. Latu.
	Ferendo, &c.	

PASSIVE VOICE.

Feror, latus, ferri, *To be brought.*

Indicative Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Feror,	ferris,	fertur ;	ferĭmur,	ferimini,	feruntur.
	vel ferre,				
<i>Im.</i> Fer-ebar,	-ebaris,	-ebatur ;	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantur.
	vel -ebare,				
<i>Per.</i> Latus ſum, &c.	latus fui, &c.				
<i>Plu.</i> Latus eram, &c.	latus fueram, &c.				
<i>Fut.</i> Ferar,	ferĕris,	feretur ;	feremur,	feremini,	ferentur.
	vel ferĕre,				

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Ferar,	feraris, v. ferare,	feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur.
<i>Im.</i> Ferrer,	ferreris, v. ferrere,	ferretur; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.
<i>Per.</i> Latus sim, &c.	latus fuerim, &c.	
<i>Plu.</i> Latus essem, &c.	latus fuissim, &c.	
<i>Fut.</i> Latus fuero, &c.		

Imperative Mode.

Pres. Ferre vel fertor, fertor; ferimini, feruntor.

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

<i>Pres.</i> Ferri.	<i>Perf.</i> Latus, -a, -um.
<i>Perf.</i> Esse vel fuisse latus, -a, -um.	<i>Fut.</i> Ferendus, -a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i> Latum iri.	

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fēro*; as, *affēro*, *attūli*, *allatum*; *aufēro*, *abstūli*, *ablatum*; *diffēro*, *distūli*, *dilatatum*; *confēro*, *contūli*, *collatum*; *infēro*, *intūli*, *illatum*; *offēro*, *obtūli*, *oblatum*; *effēro*, *extūli*, *elatum*. So *circum-*, *per-*, *trans-*, *de-*, *pro-*, *ante-*, *præ-**fēro*. In some writers we find *adfero*, *adtūli*, *adlatum*; *conlatum*, *inlatum*, *obfero*, &c. for *offerro*, &c.

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo*; *malo*, for *magis volo*; *fero*, *fers*, *fert*, &c. for *feris*, *ferit*, &c. *Feror*, *ferris*, v. *ferre*, *fertur*; for *ferēris*, &c.

Obs. 2. The imperatives of *dico*, *dūco*, and *fācio* are contracted in the same manner with *fer*: thus we say, *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, instead of *dīce*, *dūce*, *fāce*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

• *Fīo*, *factus*, *fīeri*, *To be made or done, to become*

Indicative Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Fio,	fis,	fit;	finus,	fitis,	funt.
<i>Im.</i> Fiebam,	fiebas,	fiebat;	fiebamur,	fiebatis,	fiebant.
<i>Per</i> Factus sum, &c.	factus fui, &c.				
<i>Plu</i> Factus eram, &c.	factus fueram, &c.				
<i>Fut.</i> Fiam,	fies,	fiet;	fiemus,	fietis,	fient.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Fiam,	fias,	fiat;	fiamus,	fiatis,	fiant.
<i>Im.</i> Fiērem,	fieres,	fieret;	fieremus,	fieretis,	fierent.
<i>Per.</i> Factus sim, &c.	factus fuerim, &c.				
<i>Plu.</i> Factus essem, &c.	factus fuissim, &c.				
<i>Fut.</i> Factus fuero, &c.					

Imperative.		Infinitive.	
Pr.	{ Fi, fīto : Fito, fīto :	{ fīte, fīanto. fītote, fīanto.	Pr. Fieri.
			Per. Effe v. fuisse factus, a, um.
			Fut. Factum iri.
Participles.		Supine.	
Per. Factus,	-a, -um.	Factu.	
Fut. Faciendus,	-a, -um.		

The compounds of *fācio*, which retain *a*, have also *fio* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active ; as, *calefacio*, to warm, *calefco*, *calefac* ; but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *fice* in the imperative ; as, *conficio*, *confice* ; *conficior*, *confectus*, *confici*. We find, however, *confit*, it is done, and *confieri* ; *desit*, it is wanting ; *infit*, he begins.

To Irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called NEUTER-PASSIVE Verbs, which, like *fio*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *sōleo*, *solitus*, *solēre*, to use ; *audeo*, *ausus*, *audēre*, to dare ; *gaudeo*, *gavisus*, *gaudēre*, to rejoice ; *fīdo*, *fīsus*, *fīdēre*, to trust : So *confīdo*, to trust ; and *diffīdo*, to distrust ; which also have *confīdi* & *diffīdi*. Some add *marceo*, *maesus*, *maerere*, to be sad ; but *maesus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *juratus sum* and *cenatus sum*, for *juravi* and *cenavi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs, wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification ; as, *vapūlo*, -avi, -atum, to be beaten or whipped ; *veneo*, to be sold ; *exūlo*, to be banished, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, and persons.

These three, *odi*, *capi*, and *memini*, are only used in the preterite tenses ; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs* ; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification : thus,

Odi, I hate, or have hated, *oderam*, *oderim*, *odissem*, *odero*, *odisse*. Participles, *osus*, *osurus* : *exosus*, *perosus*.

Capi, I begin or have begun, *caperam*, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse. Supine *capta*. Participles *captus*, *capturus*.

Memini, I remember, or have remembered, *memineram*, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse : Imperative, *memento*, *mementote*.

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes say *osus sum* ; and always *exosus*, *perosus sum*, and not *exodi*, *perodi*. We say *opus capit fieri*, or *captum est*.

To these some add *nōvi*, because it frequently hath the signification of the present, *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, though it comes from *nosco*, which is complete.

Furo, to be mad, *dor*, to be given, and *for*, to speak, as also *der* and *fer*, are not used in the first person singular; thus, we say, *daris*, *datur*; but never *dor*.

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following most frequently occur: *Aio*, I say, *inquam*, I say, *forem*, I should be; *aufim*, contracted for *aufus fim*, I dare; *faxim*, I'll see to it, or I will do it; *ave* and *salve*, save you, hail, good morrow; *cedo*, tell thou, or give me; *queso*, I pray.

Ind. Pr. Aio,	ais,	ait :	—	—	aiunt.
Im. Aieham,	-ebas,	-ebat :	-echamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Per. —	aisti,	—	—	—	—
Sub. Per. —	aias,	aiat :	—	aiatis,	aiant.
Imperat. Ai.	Particip. Pres. Aiens.				

Ind. Pr. Inquam,	-quis,	-quit :	-quimus,	-quitis,	-quiunt.
Im. —	—	inquebat :	—	—	inquebant.
Per. —	inquisti,	—	—	—	—
Fut. —	inquies,	inquiet :	—	—	—
Imperat. Inque,	inquito.	Particip. Pr. Inquiens.			

Sub. Im. } Plu. }	Förem, fores,	foret :	foremus,	foretis,	forent.
----------------------	---------------	---------	----------	----------	---------

Inf. Fore, to be hereafter, or to be about to be, the same with *esse futurus*.

Sub. Pr. Aufim,	aufis,	aufit :	—	—	—
Per. Faxim,	faxis,	faxit :	—	—	faxint.
Fut. Faxy,	faxis,	faxit :	—	faxitis,	faxint.

Note. *Faxim* and *faxy* are used instead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

Imper. Ave vel aveto; plur. avete vel avetote. Inf. avere.

— Salve v. salveto; — salvete v. salvetote. — salvere.

Indic. Fut. — Salvabis.

Imperat. second pers. sing. Cedo, plur. cedit.

Indic. Pres. first pers. sing. Quæro, plur. quæsumus.

Most of the other Defective verbs are but single words, and rarely to be found, but among the poets; as, *infir*, he begins; *desit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *sis*, for *si vis*; *sultis*, for *si vultis*; *sodes*, for *si audes*; *capis*, for *cape si vis*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any *person* or *nominative* before it.

Impersonal verbs in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person ; thus, *delectat*, it delights ; *dēcet*, it becomes ; *contingit*, it happens ; *evēnit*, it happens :

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Ind. Pr.	Delectat,	Dēcet,	Contingit,	Evēnit.
Im.	Delectabat,	Decebat,	Contingebat,	Eveniebat,
Per.	Delectavit,	Decuit,	Contigit,	Evēnit,
Plu.	Delectaverat,	Decuerat,	Contigerat,	Evenerat,
Fut.	Delectabit,	Decebit,	Continget.	Eveniet.
Sub. Pr.	Delectet,	Deceat,	Contingat,	Eveniat,
Im.	Delectaret,	Decēret,	Contingēret,	Eveniret,
Per.	Delectaverit,	Decuerit,	Contigerit,	Evenerit,
Plu.	Delectavisset,	Decuisset,	Contigisset,	Evenisset,
Fut.	Delectaverit,	Decuerit.	Contigerit.	Evenerit.
Inf. Pr.	Delectāre,	Decēre,	Contingēre,	Evenīre,
Per.	Delectavisse.	Decuisse.	Contigisse.	Evenisse.

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs, which otherwise have no passive ; as, *pugnātur*, *favētur*, *curritur*, *venitur* ; from *pugno*, to fight ; *faveo*, to favour ; *curro*, to run ; *venio*, to come :

Ind. Pr.	Pugnātur,	Favētur,	Curritur,	Venitur,
Im.	Pugnabatur,	Favebatur,	Curriebatur,	Veniebatur,
Per.	Pugnatum est,	Fautum est,	Cursum est,	Ventum est,
Plu.	Pugnatum erat,	Fautum erat,	Cursum erat,	Ventum erat,
Fut.	Pugnabitur.	Favebitur.	Curretur.	Venietur.
Sub. Pr.	Pugnctur,	Faveatur,	Curatur,	Veniatur,
Im.	Pugnaretur,	Faveretur,	Curretetur,	Veniretur,
Per.	Pugnatum sit,	Fautum sit,	Cursum sit,	Ventum sit,
Plu.	Pugnatum esset,	Fautum esset,	Cursum esset,	Ventum esset,
Fut.	Pugnatum fuerit.	Fautum fuerit.	Cursum fuerit.	Ventum fuerit.
Inf. Pr.	Pugnari,	Faveri,	Curri,	Veniri,
	Pugnatum esse,	Fautum esse,	Cursum esse,	Ventum esse,
	Pugnatum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative, but instead of it we take the subjunctive ; as, *delectet*, let it delight, &c. ; nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few ; as, *panitens*, -dum, dus, &c. *Induci ad pudendum et pigendum*, Cic. In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real Impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; *dēcet*, it becomes; *pēnitēt*, it repents; *oportet*, it behoves; *misēret*, it pities; *pīget*, it irketh; *pūdet*, it shameth; *licet*, it is lawful; *libet* or *libet*, it pleaseth; *tadet*, it wearieith; *figuet*, it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite; *miseret*, *miseruit*, or *miseritum est*; *piget*, *piguī*, or *pigitum est*; *pudet*, *puđuit*, or *puđitum est*; *licet*, *licuit*, or *licitum est*; *libet*, *libuit*, or *libitum est*; *tadet*, *tēđuit*, *tasum est*, oftener *perťasum est*. But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations:

In the first, *Juvat*, *spectat*, *vācat*, *stat*, *constat*, *prāstat*, *reťtat*, &c.

In the second, *Appāret*, *atťinet*, *perťinet*, *dēbet*, *dōlet*, *nōcet*, *lātet*, *l'iquet*, *pācet*, *plācet*, *displācet*, *ēdet*, *sōlet*, &c.

In the third, *Accidit*, *insipit*, *deťnit*, *sufficit*, &c.

In the fourth, *Convēnit*, *expēdit*, &c.

Also irregular verbs, *Est*, *obeť*, *prođet*, *potet*, *interet*, *superet*; *fit*, *prāterit*, *nequit*, *subit*, *confert*, *refert*, &c.

Obs. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which exprefs the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgūrat*, *fulmīnat*, *tōnat*, *grandīnat*, *gēlat*, *pluit*, *ningit*, *lucet*, *adveťperascit*, &c.

Obs. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern; as, *placet mibi*, *tibi*, *illi*, it pleases me, thee, him; or I please, thou pleasest, &c. *pugnatur a me*, *a te*, *ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c. So *Curritur*, *venitur a me*, *a te*, &c. I run, thou runnest, &c. *Favetur tibi a me*, Thou art favored by me, or I favor thee, &c.

Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they exprefs, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus we can say, *ego placeo tibi*, I please you; but we cannot say, *si places audire*, if you please to hear, but *si placet tibi audire*. So, we can say, *multa homini contingunt*, many things happen to a man: but instead of *ego contigī esse domi*, we must either say, *me contigit esse domi*, or *mibi contigit esse domi*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

Those are called Redundant Verbs, which have different forms to exprefs the same sense: thus, *assentio* and *assentior*, to agree; *fabrīco* and *fabrīcor*, to frame; *merco* and *mercor*, to deserve, &c. These verbs, however, under the passive form have likewise a passive signification.

Several verbs are used in different conjugations.

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and rarely of the third; as, *lavo*, *lavās*, *lavāre*: and *lavo*, *lavīs*, *lavēre*, to wash.

2. Some are usually of the second, and rarely of the third; as,
Ferveo, ferves, and servo, servis, to boil.
Fulgeo, fulges, and fulgo, fulgis, to shine.
Strideo, strides, and strido, stridis, to make a noise.
Tueor, tuëris, and tuor, tuëris, to defend.

To these add *tergeo, terges*; and *tergo, tergis*, to wipe, which are equally common.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and rarely of the fourth; as,

Fodio, fodis, fodère, and fodio, fodis, fodire, to dig.
Sallo, fallis, fallère, and fallio, fallis, fallire, to salt.
Arcesso, -is, arcessere, and arcesso, arcessire, to send for.
Morior, morëris, mori, and morior, moriris, moriri, to die.
So Orior, orëris, and orior, oriris, oriri, to rise.
Potior, potëris, and potior, potiris, potiri, to enjoy.

There is likewise a verb, which is usually of the second conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, *cico, cies, ciere*; and *cic, cis, cire*, to rouse; whence *accire* and *accitus*.

To these we may add the verb *EDO*, to eat, which, though regularly formed, also agrees in several of its parts with *sum*; thus,

Ind. Presf. *Edo, edis* or *es, edit* or *est*, — *editis* or *estis*. —

Imp. *Ede* or *es, edito* or *esto*; *edite* or *este*; *editote* or *estote*.

Sub. Imperf. *Ederem* or *esset*, *ederes* or *esses*, &c.

Inf. Presf. *Edere* or *esse*.

Passive Ind. Presf. *Editur* or *estur*.

It may not be improper here to subjoin a list of those verbs which resemble one another in some of their parts, though they differ in signification. Of these some agree in the present, some in the preterite, and others in the supine.

1. The following agree in the present, but are differently conjugated:

Aggëro, -as, to heap up.

Appello, -as, to call.

Compello, -as, to address.

Colligo, -as, to bind.

Consterno, -as, to astonish.

Effëro, -as, to enrage.

Fundo, -as, to found.

Mando, -as, to command.

Obsëro, -as, to lock.

Völo, -as, to fly.

Aggëro, -is, to bring together.

Appello, -is, to arrive.

Compello, -is, to drive together.

Colligo, -is, to gather together.

Consterno, -is, to strew.

Effëro, -fers, to bring out.

Fundo, -is, to pour out.

Mando, -is, to cheer.

Obsëro, -is, to beset.

Völo, vis, to will.

Of this class some have a different quantity; as,

Cölo, -as, to strain.

Dico, -as, to dedicate.

Cölo, -is, to till.

Dico, -is, to say.

Edūco, -as, *to train up.*

Lēgo, -as, *to send.*

Vādo, -as, *to wade.*

Edūco, -is, *to lead forth.*

Lēgo, -is, *to read.*

Vādo, -is, *to go.*

2. The following verbs agree in the preterite :

Acceō, acui, *to be sour.*

Cresco, crēvi, *to grow.*

Frigeo, frixi, *to be cold.*

Fulgeo, fulsi, *to shine.*

Lūceo, luxi, *to shine.*

Pāveo, pāvi, *to be afraid.*

Pendo, pēpendi, *to hang.*

Acuo, acui, *to sharpen.*

Cerno, crēvi, *to see.*

Frigo, frixi, *to fry.*

Fulcio, fulsi, *to prop.*

Lūgeo, luxi, *to mourn.*

Pasco, pāvi, *to feed.*

Pendo, pēpendi, *to weigh.*

3. The following agree in the supine :

Cresco, crētum, *to grow.*

Māneo, māsum, *to stay.*

Sto, statum, *to stand.*

Succenseo, -censum, *to be angry.*

Tēneo, tentum, *to hold.*

Verro, versum, *to sweep.*

Vinco, victum, *to overcome.*

Cerno, cretum, *to behold.*

Mando, māsum, *to chew.*

Sisto, statum, *to stop.*

Succendo, -censum, *to kindle.*

Tendo, tentum, *to stretch out.*

Verto, versum, *to turn.*

Vivo, victum, *to live.*

THE OBSOLETE CONJUGATION.

This chiefly occurs in old writers, and only in particular conjugations and tenses.

1. The ancient Latins made the imperfect of the indicative active of the fourth conjugation in *IBAM*, without the *e*; as, *audībam, scībam*; for *audīebam, scīebam*.

2. In the future of the indicative of the fourth conjugation, they used *IBO* in the active, and *ībor* in the passive voice; as, *dormībo, dormībor*, for *dormiam, dormiar*.

3. The present of the subjunctive anciently ended in *IM*; as, *edim*, for *edam*; *duim* for *dem*.

4. The perfect of the subjunctive active sometimes occurs in *SSIM*, and the future in *SSO*; as, *levāssim, levāssō*, for *levaverim, levavero*; *cūssim, cūssō*, for *ceperim, cepero*: Hence the future of the infinitive was formed in *ASSERE*; as, *levāssere*, for *levaturus esse*.

5. In the second person of the present of the imperative passive, we find *MINO* in the singular, and *minor* in the plural; as, *fāmīno*, for *fare*; and *progrēdimīno* for *progrēdimini*.

6. The syllable *ER* was frequently added to the present of the infinitive passive; as, *fariēre*, for *fari*; *dicierēre*, for *dici*.

7. The participles of the future time active, and perfect passive, when joined with the verb *esse*, were sometimes used as indeclinable: thus, *credo inimicos dictūrum esse*, for *dictūros*, Cic. *Obportet ad me missum facias*, for *missas*, Cic. *ad Attic. viii. 12*.

DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

I. Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominative*; as, *Cano*, to sup; *laudo*, to praise; *fraudo*, to defraud; *lapido*, to throw stones; *opëror*, to work; *frumentor*, to forage; *lignor*, to gather fuel, &c. from *cena*, *laus*, *fraus*, &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance, they are called *Imitative*; as, *Patrissô*, *græcor*, *bubulo*, *cornicor*, &c. I imitate or resemble my father, a Græcian, a crow, &c. from *pater*, *Græcus*, *cornix*.

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *âtus* into *ito*, in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, to cry, *clamito*, to cry frequently: *terreo*, *terrô*; *verto*, *verso*; *dormio*, *dormito*.

In like manner, Deponent verbs form Frequentatives in *or*; as, *minor*, to threaten; *minitor*, to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato* from *no*; *noscito* from *nosce*; *scitor*, or rather *sciscitor*, from *scio*; *pavito*, from *paveo*; *sequor*, from *sequor*; *loquitor*, from *loquor*. So *quærito*, *fundito*, *agito* *fluïto*, &c.

From Frequentative verbs are also formed other frequentatives; as, *curro*, *curso*, *cursito*; *pello*, *pulso*, *pulsito*, or by contraction *pulto*; *capio*, *capto*, *captito*; *cano*, *canto*, *cantito*; *defendo*, *defenso*, *defensito*; *disco*, *dicto*, *dictito*; *gero*, *gesto*, *gestito*; *jacio*, *jecto*, *jectito*; *venio*, *ventito*; *mutio*, *musso*, (for *mutito*) *muscito*, &c.

Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

2. *INCEPTIVE* Verbs mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person sing. of the present of the indicative, by adding *co*: as, *caleo*, to be hot, *calesco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *labasco*, from *labo*; *tremisco*, from *tremo*; *obdormisco*, from *obdormio*. *Hisco*, from *bio*, is contracted for *biasco*. Inceptives are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerasco*, from *puer*; *dulcesco*, from *dulcis*; *juvenesco*, from *juvenis*.

All Inceptives are Neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. *DESIDERATIVE* Verbs signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine, by adding *rio* and shortening the *u*; as, *canaturio*, I desire to sup, from *canatus*. They

are all of the fourth conjugation, and want both preterite and supine, except these three, *esurio*, to desire to eat; *parturio*, to be in travail; *nupturio*, to desire to be married.

There are a few verbs in L.L.O, which are called *Diminutive*; as, *cantillo*, *forbillo*, -are, I sing, I sup a little. To these some add *albico* and *candico*, -are, to be or to grow whitish; also *nigrico*, *fodico*, and *vellico*. Some verbs in SSO are called *Intensive*; as, *Capesso*, *faceffo*, *peteffo* or *petisso*, I take, I do, I seek earnestly.

Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of the simple verbs are not in use; as, *Futo*, *fendo*, *specio*, *gruo*, &c. The component parts usually remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as, *prodeo*, for *pro-co*: or taken away; as, *asporto*, *omitto*, *trado*, *pejro*, *pergo*, *debeo*, *præbeo*, &c. for *absporto*, *obmitto*, *transdo*, *perjuro*, *perrego*, *debibeo*, *præhibeo*, &c. So *demo*, *promo*, *fumo*, of *de*, *pro*, *sub*, and *emo*, which anciently signified *to take or to take away*. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition, is changed; as, *dawno*, *condemno*; *calca*, *conculco*; *lædo*, *collido*; *audio*, *obœdio*, &c. *Affero*, *aufero*, *collaudo*, *implico*, &c. for *adfero*, *abfero*, *conlaudo*, *inplico*, &c.

PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called, because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having in *Latin* gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both.

Participles in *Latin* are declined like adjectives; and their signification is various, according to the nature of the verbs from which they come: only participles in *du* are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active; as, *Amans*, loving; *amatûrus*, about to love: and the perfect and future passive; as, *amatus*, loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

The *Latins* have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in English, we use a conjunction, and the plu-perfect of the subjunctive in *Latin*, or some other tense, according to its connection with the other words of a sentence; as, he having loved, *quum amavisset*, &c.

Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles; as, *Sedens*, *sessurus*; *stans*, *staturus*.

From some Neuter verbs are formed Participles of the perfect tense ; as, *Erratus, festinatus, juratus, laboratus, vigilatus, cessatus, sudatus, triumphatus, regnatus, decursus, desitus, emeritus, emersus, obitus, placitus, successus, occāsus*, &c. and also of the future in *du* : as, *Jurandus, vigilandus, regnandus, carendus, dormiendus, erubescendus*, &c. Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Venco*, has no participle : *Eido*, only *fidens* and *sisus* ; *soleo, solens* and *solitus* ; *vapūlo, vapulans* and *vapulaturus* ; *Gaudeo, gaudens, gavisus*, and *gavisurus* ; *Audeo, audens, ausus, ausurus, audendus*. *Ausus* is used both in an active and passive sense ; as, *Ausi omnes immane nefus, ausoque potiti*. Virg.

Deponent and Common verbs have commonly four Participles ; as,

Loquens, speaking ; *locutūrus*, about to speak ; *locutus*, having spoken ; *loquendus*, to be spoken : *Dignans*, vouchsafing ; *dignaturus*, about to vouchsafe ; *dignatus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, or having been vouchsafed ; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many Participles of the perfect tense from Deponent verbs have both an active and passive sense ; as, *Abominatus, conatus, confessus, adortus, amplexus, blanditus, largitus, mentitus, oblitus, testatus, veneratus*, &c.

There are several Participles compounded with *in* signifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition ; as, *Insciens, insperans, indicens*, for *non dicens*, *inopinans* and *necopinans*, *immērens* ; *Illatus, impransus, inconsultus, incustoditus, immetatus, impunitus, imparatus, incomitatus, incomptus, indemnatus, indotatus, incorruptus, interritus, and imperterritus, intestatus, inausus, inopinatus, inultus, incensus*, for *non census*, not registered ; *infectus*, for *non factus*, *invisus*, for *non visus*, *indictus*, for *non dictus*, &c. There is a different *incensus* from *incendo* : *infectus* from *infusio* ; *invisus* from *invideo* ; *indictus* from *indico*, &c.

If from the signification of a Participle we take away *time*, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison ; as,

Amans, loving, *amantior, amantissimus* ; *doctus*, learned, *doctior, doctissimus* : or a substantive ; as, *Præfectus*, a commander or governor ; *consonans*, f. sc. *litera*, a consonant ; *continens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent ; *confluens*, m. a place where two rivers run together ; *oriens*, m. sc. *sol*, the east ; *occidens*, m. the west ; *dictum*, a saying ; *scriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *ATUS*, *ITUS*, and *UTUS*, which although resembling participles are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs ; as, *alatus, barbatus, cordatus, caudatus, cristatus, auritus, pellitus, turritus* ; *astutus, cornutus, nasutus*, &c. winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *auratus, aratus, argentatus, ferratus, plumbatus, gypsatus, calcatus, clypeatus, galeatus, tunicatus, larvatus, palliatus, tymphatus, purpuratus, prætextatus*, &c. covered with gold, brass, silver, &c. are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *calamistratus*, frizzled, crisped or curled, *crinitus*, having long hair, *peritus*, &c.

There are a kind of Verbal adjectives in *BUNDUS*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble Participles in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action; as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valde vitans*, avoiding much; *Sall. Jug.* 60. and 101; *Liv.* xxv. 13. So *errabundus*, *ludibundus*, *populabundus*, *moribundus*, &c.

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

GERUNDS are Participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed; and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, through all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative.

There are, both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the gerund, *Delector legendo Ciceronem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectione Ciceronis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

The Gerund and Future Participle of verbs in *io*, and some others, often take *u* instead of *e*; as, *faciundum*, *di*, *do*, *du*; *experiundum*, *potiundum*, *gerundum*, *petundum*, *dicundum*, &c. for *faciendum*, &c.

SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any person or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former Supine is commonly used in an active, and the latter in a passive sense, but sometimes the contrary; as, *coctam non vapulatum dudum conductus fui*, i. e. *ut vapularem*, v. *verberarer*, to be beaten, Plaut.

ADVERB.

An Adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, added to a verb, adjective, or other adverb, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

All Adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance*; and those which denote *Quality*, *Manner*, &c.

I. Adverbs denoting **CIRCUMSTANCE** are chiefly those of *Place*, *Time*, and *Order*.

1. Adverbs of *Place* are fivefold, namely such as signify,

1. *Motion or rest in a place.*

Ubi ?	Where ?
Hic,	Here.
Illic,	} There.
Isthic,	
Ibi,	
Intus,	Within.
Foris,	Without.
Ubique,	Every where.
Nusquam,	No where.
Alicubi,	Some where.
Alibi,	Else where.
Ubivis,	Any where.
Ibidem,	In the same place.

2. *Motion to a place.*

Quo ?	Whither ?
Huc,	Hither.
Illuc,	} Thither.
Isthuc,	
Intro,	In.
Extras,	Out.
Eò,	To that place.
Aliò,	To another place.
Aliquò,	To some place.
Eòdem,	To the same place.

3. *Motion towards a place.*

Quorsum ?	Whitherward ?
Versus,	Towards.

Horsum,	Hitberward.
Illosum,	Thitberward.
Sursum,	Upward.
Deorsum,	Downward.
Antrorsum,	Forward.
Retrorsum,	Backward.
Dextrorsum,	Towards the right.
Sinistrorsum,	Towards the left.

4. *Motion from a place.*

Unde ?	Whence ?
Hinc,	Hence.
Illinc,	} Thence.
Isthinc,	
Inde,	
Aliunde,	From else where.
Alicunde,	From some place.
Sicunde,	If from any place.
Utrunque,	On both sides.
Superne,	From above.
Inferne,	From below.
Cœlitus,	From heaven.
Funditus,	From the ground.

5. *Motion through or by a place.*

Quà ?	Which way ?
Hàc,	This way.
Illac,	} That way.
Isthac,	
Alià,	Another way.

2. Adverbs of *Time* are threefold, namely, such as signify,

1. *Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.*

Nunc,	Now.	Protinus,	Instantly.
Hodie,	To day.	Illico,	Straightway.
Tunc,	} Then.	Cras,	To-morrow.
Tum,		Postridie,	The day after.
Heri,	Yesterday.	Perendie,	Two days hence.
Dudum,	} Heretofore.	Nondum,	Not yet.
Pridem,		Quando ?	When ?
Pridie,	The day before.	Aliquando,	} Sometimes.
Nudiustertius,	Three days ago.	Nonnunquam,	
Nuper,	Lately.	Interdum,	Ever.
Jamjam,	} Presently.	Semper,	Never.
Mox,		Nunquam,	In the mean time.
Statim,	By and by.	Interim,	Daily.
		Quotidie,	

2. Continuance of time.

<i>Diu,</i>	<i>Long.</i>
<i>Quamdiu?</i>	<i>How long?</i>
<i>Tamdiu,</i>	<i>So long.</i>
<i>Jamdiu,</i>	} <i>Long ago.</i>
<i>Jamdūdum,</i>	
<i>Jampridem,</i>	

3. Vicissitude or repetition of time.

<i>Quoties?</i>	<i>How often?</i>
<i>Sæpe,</i>	<i>Often.</i>
<i>Rarò,</i>	<i>Seldom.</i>
<i>Toties,</i>	<i>So often.</i>

<i>Aliquoties,</i>	<i>For several times.</i>
<i>Vicissim,</i>	} <i>By turns.</i>
<i>Alternatim,</i>	
<i>Rursus,</i>	} <i>Again.</i>
<i>Iterum,</i>	
<i>Subinde,</i>	} <i>Ever and anon, now and then.</i>
<i>Identidem,</i>	
<i>Semel,</i>	<i>Once.</i>
<i>Bis,</i>	<i>Twice.</i>
<i>Ter,</i>	<i>Thrice.</i>
<i>Quater,</i>	<i>Four times, &c.</i>

3. Adverbs of Order.

<i>Inde,</i>	<i>Then.</i>	<i>Denique,</i>	<i>Finally.</i>
<i>Deinde,</i>	<i>After that.</i>	<i>Postremò,</i>	<i>Lastly.</i>
<i>Dehinc,</i>	<i>Henceforth.</i>	<i>Primò, -um,</i>	<i>First.</i>
<i>Porro,</i>	<i>Moreover.</i>	<i>Secundò, -um,</i>	<i>Secondly.</i>
<i>Deinceps,</i>	<i>So forth.</i>	<i>Tertiò, -um,</i>	<i>Thirdly.</i>
<i>Denuo,</i>	<i>Anew.</i>	<i>Quartò, -um,</i>	<i>Fourthly, &c.</i>

II. Adverbs denoting QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*.

Those called *Absolute* denote,

1. QUALITY, simply; as *bene*, well; *malè*, ill; *fortiter*, bravely: and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.

2. CERTAINTY; as, *profectò*, *certè*, *sanè*, *planè*, *ne, utique*, *ita*, *etiam*, truly, verily, yes; *quidni*, why not? *omnino*, certainly.

3. CONTINGENCE; as *fortè*, *forſan*, *fortaſſis*, *fors*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.

4. NEGATION; as, *non*, *haud*, not; *nequāquam*, not at all; *neutiquam*, by no means; *minime*, nothing less.

5. PROHIBITION; as, *ne*, not.

6. SWEARING; as, *hercle*, *pol*, *edēpol*, *mecaſtor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.

7. EXPLAINING; as, *utpōte*, *videlicet*, *ſcilicet*, *nimium*, *nempe*, to wit, namely.

8. SEPARATION; as, *ſeorſum*, apart; *ſeparatim*, ſeparately; *ſigillatim*, one by one; *virūtim*, man by man; *oppidatim*, town by town, &c.

9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, *ſimul*, *unà*, *pariter*, together; *generaliter*, generally; *uniuſaliter*, univerſally; *plurimque*, for the moſt part.

10. INDICATION or POINTING out; as, *en, ecce, lo, behold.*

11. INTERROGATION; as, *cur, quare, quamobrem, why, wherefore? num, an, whether? quomodo, qui, how? To which add, Ubi, quo, quorsum, unde, quà, quando, quamdiu, quoties.*

Those which are called *Comparative* denote,

1. EXCESS; as, *Valde, maximè, magnopère, maximopere, summopere, admòdum, oppidò, perquam, longè, greatly, very much, exceedingly; nimis, nimium, too much; prorsus, penitus, omnino, altogether, wholly; magis, more; melius better; pejus, worse; fortius, more bravely: and optimè, best; pessimè, worst; fortissimè, most bravely; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.*

2. DEFECT; as, *Ferme, ferè, propemòdum, penè, almost; parum, little; paulo, paululum, very little.*

3. PREFERENCE; as, *potius, satius, rather; potissimum, precipuè, præsertim, chiefly, especially; imo, yes, nay, nay rather.*

4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; as, *ita, sic, adeò, so; ut, uti, sicut, sicùti, velut, velùti, ceu, tanquam, quasi, as, as if; quemadmòdum, even as; satis, enough; iidem, in like manner; juxta, alike, equally.*

5. UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY; as, *aliter, secus, otherwise; aliòqui or alioquin, else; nedum, much more or much less.*

6. ABATEMENT; as, *sensim, paulatim, pedetentim, by degrees, piecemeal; vix, scarcely; egre, hardly, with difficulty.*

7. EXCLUSION; as, *tantum, solum, mòdo, tantummodo, duntaxat, demum, only.*

DERIVATION, COMPARISON, and COMPOSITION, of ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived, 1. from Substantives, and end commonly in *TIM* or *TUS*; as, *Partim*, partly, by parts; *nominatim*, by name; *generatim*, by kinds, generally; *speciatim*, *vicatim*, *gregatim*; *radicibus*, from the root, &c. 2. From adjectives: and these are by far the

most numerous. Such as come from Adjectives of the first and second declension usually end in E; as, *liberè*, freely; *plene*, fully: Some in O, UM, and TER; as, *salutè*, *tantum*, *graviter*: A few in A, ITUS and IM; as, *rectè*, *antiquitè*, *privatim*. Some are used two or three ways; as, *primum*, v. -ò; *purè*, -iter; *certè*, -ò; *cautè*, -tim; *humanè*, -iter, -itus; *publicè*, *publicitus*, &c. Adverbs from Adjectives of the third declension commonly end in TER, seldom in E; as, *surpiter*, *feliciter*, *acriter*, *pariter*; *facile*, *repente*: one in O, *omnino*. The neuter of Adjectives is sometimes taken Adverbially; as, *recente natus*, for *recenter*; *perfidem ridens*, for *perfidè*, Hor. *multa reluctans*, for, *multum* or *valde*, Virg. So in English we say, to *speak loud, big, &c.* for *loudly, bigly, &c.* In many cases a Substantive is understood; as, *primò*, sc. *loco*, *optatò advenis*, sc. *tempore*; *hàc*, sc. *vià*, &c.

3. From each of the pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as from *ille*, *illic*, *illuc*, *illorsum*, *illinc*, and *illac*. So from *quis*, *ubi*, *quo*, *quorsum*, *unde*, and *quà*. Also of time; thus, *quando*, *quandiu*, and *quoties*.

4. From verbs and participles; as, *casim*, with the edge; *punctim*, with the point; *striatim*, closely; from *cedo*, *pungo*, *stringo*; *amanter*, *properanter*, *dubitanter*; *distinètè*, *emendatè*; *meritò*, *inopinato*, &c. But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *ex* understood, which is also sometimes expressed.

5. From prepositions; as, *intus*, *intro*, from *in*; *clanculum*, from *clam*; *subtus*, from *sub*, &c.

Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e*, or *ter*; as, *durè*, *facile*, *acriter*: The *comparative*, in *ius*; as, *durius*, *facilius*, *acrius*: The *superlative*, in *imè*; as, *durissimè*, *facillimè*, *acerrimè*.

If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too; as, *benè*, *melius*, *optimè*; *malè*, *pejus*, *pestimè*; *parum*, *minus*, *minimè*, & *um*; *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum*; *prope*, *propius*, *proximè*; *ocysus*, *ocysime*; *prius*, *primo*, -um; *nuper*, *nuperrime*; *novè*, & *noviter*, *novissimè*; *meritò*, *meritissimò*; &c. Those adverbs also are compared whose primitives are obsolete; as, *sapè*, *sapius*, *sapissimè*; *penitus*, *penitiùs*, *penitissimè*; *fatis*, *fatiùs*; *secus*, *seciùs*; &c. *Magis*, *maxime*; and *potius*, *potissimum*, want the *positive*.

Adverbs are variously compounded of all the different parts of speech; thus, *postredie*, *magnopere*, *maximopere*, *summopere*, *tantopere*, *multimodis*, *omnimodis*, *quomodo*, *quare*; *of postero die*; *magno opere*, &c. *Illicet*, *scilicet*, *videlicet*, *of ire*, *scire*, *videre licet*; *illitè*, *of in loco*; *quorsum*, *of quo versum*; *comminus*, *band to band*, *of cum* or *con* and *manus*; *eminus*, *at a distance*, *of e*, and *manus*; *quorsum*, *of quo versum*; *denuo anovè*, *of de novo*; *quin*, *why not*, *but*, *of qui ne*; *cur*, *of cui rei*; *pedetentim*, *step by step*, *as it were* *pedem tendendo*; *perentie*, *for perempto die*; *nimirum*, *of ne*, i. e. *non mi-*

rum ; antea, postea, præterea, &c. of ante and ea, &c. Ubivis, quovis, undelibet, quousque, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, desuper, insuper, quomobrem, &c. of ubi, and vis, &c. nudiustertius, of nunc dies tertius ; identidem, of idem et idem ; impræsentiarum, i. e. in tempore rerum præsentium, &c.

Obs. 1. The Adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more ; as, *sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientia* ; *hic*, for *in hoc loco* ; *semper*, for *in omni tempore* ; *semel*, for *una vice* ; *his*, for *duobus vicibus* ; *Mæbercule*, for *Hercules me juvet*, &c.

Obs. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other : as, *ubi*, where or when ; *inde*, from that place, from that time, after that, next ; *hactenus*, hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order, &c.

Obs. 3. Some adverbs of time are either *past*, *present*, or *future* ; as *jam*, already, now, by and by ; *olim*, long ago, some time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various ; thus, *esse peregrè*, to be abroad ; *ire peregrè*, to go abroad ; *redire peregrè*, to return from abroad.

Obs. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with *cunque*, answer to the English adjec-tion *so ever* ; as, *ubiubi*, or *ubicunque*, wheresoever ; *quoquò*, *quocunque*, whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in other interrogative words ; as, *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many soever ; *quantusquantus*, or *quantuscunque*, how great soever ; *utut*, or *utcunque*, however or howsoever, &c.

PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is an indeclinable word which shews the relation of one thing to another.

There are twenty-eight Prepositions in Latin which govern the accusative ; that is, have an accusative after them.

Ad,	To.	Infra,	Beneath.
Apud,	At.	Juxta,	Nigh to.
Ante,	Before.	Ob,	For.
Adversus,	} Against, towards.	Propter,	For, hard by.
Adversum,		Per,	By, through.
Contra,	Against.	Præter,	Besides, except.
Cis,	} On this side.	Penes,	In the power of.
Citra,		Post,	After.
Circa,	} About.	Pone,	Behind.
Circum,		Secus,	By, along.
Erga,	Towards.	Secundum,	According to.
Extra,	Without.	Supra,	Above.
Inter,	Between, among.	Trans,	On the farther side.
Intra,	Within.	Ultra,	Beyond.

The Prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen ; namely,

A,	} From, or by.	De,	Of, concerning.
Ab,		E,	} Of, out of.
Abs,		Ex,	
Absque,	Without.	Pro,	For.
Cum,	With.	Præ,	Before.
Clam,	{ Without the know- ledge of.	Palam,	With the knowledge of.
Coram,		Sine,	Without.
	{ Before, in the pre- sence of.	Tenus,	Up to, as far as.

These four govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative :

In, *In, into.* Sub, *Under.* Super, *Above.* Subter, *Beneath.*

Obs. 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally placed before the word with which they are joined. Some, however, are put after ; as, *cum*, when joined with *me, te, se*, and sometimes with *quo, qui, and quibus* : thus, *mecum, tecum, &c.* *Tenus* is always placed after ; as, *mento tenus*, up to the chin. So likewise are *versus* and *usque* ; and *ward*, in English ; as, *toward, eastward, &c.*

Obs. 2. Prepositions, both in English and Latin, are often compounded with other parts of speech, particularly with verbs ; as, *subire*, to undergo. In English they are frequently put after verbs ; as, *to go in, to go out, to look to, &c.*

Prepositions are also sometimes compounded together ; as, *Ex adversus eum locum*, Cic. *Ex adversum Athenas*, C. Nep. *In ante diem quartum Kalendarum Decembris distulit*, i. e. *usque in eum diem*, Cic. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octob. i. e. ab eo die*, Liv. *Ex ante pridie Idus Septembris*, Plin. But prepositions compounded together commonly become adverbs or conjunctions ; as, *propalam, protinus, insuper, &c.*

Obs. 3. Prepositions in composition usually retain their primitive signification : as, *adeo*, to go to : *præpono*, to place before. But from this there are several exceptions. 1. *In* joined with adjectives generally denotes privation ; as, *infidus*, unfaithful : but when joined with verbs, increases their signification ; as, *induro*, to harden greatly. In some words *in* has two contrary senses ; as, *invocatus*, called upon, or not called upon. So *infrēnatus, immutatus, insuetus, impensus, inbumatus, intentatus, &c.* 2. *PER* commonly increases the signification ; as, *Percārus, percēler, percōmis, percuriosus, perdifficilis, perelēgans, pergrātus, pergrāvis, perhospitālis, perillustis, perletus, &c.* very dear, very swift, &c. 3. *PRÆ* sometimes increases ; as, *Præclārus, prædīves, prædulcis, prædūrus, præpinguis, prævalidus ; prævalco, præpolleo* : and also *Ex* ; as, *Exclāmo, exaggēro, exaugeo, excalescio, extenuo, exhibāro* ;

but **EX** sometimes denotes privation; as, *Exsanguis*, bloodless, pale; *excors*, *exanimis*, -mo, &c. **4.** **SUB** often diminishes; as, *Subalbidus*, *subabsurdus*, *subamārus*, *subdulcis*, *subgrandis*, *subgrāvis*, *subniger*, &c. a little white or whitish, &c. **DE** often signifies downward; as, *Decido*, *decurro*, *degrāvo*, *despicio*, *delābor*: sometimes increases; as, *Deāmo*, *demīror*; and sometimes expresses privation; as, *Demens*, *decōlor*, *deformis*, &c.

Obf. 4. There are five or six syllables, namely, *am*, *di*, or *dis*, *re*, *se*, *con*, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words: however they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am,	<i>round about.</i>	} as,	Ambio,	<i>to surround.</i>
Di,	} <i>asunder.</i>		Divello,	<i>to pull asunder.</i>
Dis,			Distrāho,	<i>to draw asunder.</i>
Re,	<i>again.</i>		Relēgo,	<i>to read again.</i>
Se,	<i>aside or apart.</i>		Sepōno,	<i>to lay aside.</i>
Con,	<i>together.</i>		Concreſco,	<i>to grow together.</i>

INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some Interjections are natural sounds, and common to all languages; as, *Oh!* *Ab!*

Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them; thus,

1. JOY; as, *evax!* hey, brave, io!
2. GRIEF; as, *ah, bei, ben, eben!* ah, alas, woes me!
3. WONDER; as, *papa!* O strange! *vab!* hah!
4. PRAISE; as, *euge!* well done!
5. AVERSION; as, *apāge!* away, begone, avaunt, off, fy, tush!
6. EXCLAIMING; as, *Oh, prob!* O!
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as, *atat i ha, aha!*
8. IMPRECATION; as, *va!* wo, pox on't!
9. LAUGHTER; as, *ba, ba, be!*
10. SILENCING; as, *au, 'st, pax!* silence, hush, 'st!
11. CALLING; as, *eho, ebōdum, io, bo!* so, ho, ho, O!
12. DERISION; as, *lui!* away with!
13. ATTENTION; as, *hem!* ha!

Some Interjections denote several different passions: thus, *Vab!* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections; as, *Mulum!* with a mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! fy, fy! *Misērum,* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the villany!

CONJUNCTION.

A Conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together.

Thus, *You and I, and the boy, read Virgil*, is one sentence, made up of these three, by the conjunction *and* twice employed; *I read Virgil; You read Virgil; The boy reads Virgil*. In like manner, "*You and I read Virgil, but the boy reads Ovid*," is one sentence, made up of three, by the conjunctions *and* and *but*.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et, ac, atque, que, and; etiam, quoque, item, also; cum, tum, both, and*. Also their contraries, *nec, neque, neu, neve, neither, nor*.

2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut, ve, vel, seu, sive, either, or*.

3. CONCESSIVE; as, *etsi, etiamfi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis, though, although, albeit*.

4. ADVERSATIVE; as, *sed, verum, autem, at, ast, atqui, but; tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verumtamen, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless*.

5. CAUSAL; as, *nam, namque, enim, for; quia, quippe, quoniam, because; quod, that, because*.

6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; as, *ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, therefore; quapropter, quocirca, wherefore; proinde, therefore; cum, quum, seeing, since; quandoquidem, forasmuch as*.

7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; as, *ut, uti, that, to the end that*.

8. CONDITIONAL; as, *si, sin, if; dum, modo, dummodo, provided, upon condition that; siquidem, if indeed*.

9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; as, *ni, nisi, unless, except*.

10. DIMINUTIVE; as, *saltem, certe, at least*.

11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; as, *an, anne, num, whether; he, annon, whether, not; necne, or, not*.

12. EXPLETIVE; as *autem, vero, now, truly; quidem, equidem, indeed*.

13. ORDINATIVE; as, *deinde, thereafter; denique, finally; insuper, moreover; cetèrum, moreover, but, however*.

14. DECLARATIVE; as, *videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum, &c. to wit, namely*.

Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions*. Thus, *an, anne, &c.* are either *interrogative adverbs*: as, *An scribit?* Does he write? or *suspensive conjunctions*; as, *Nescio an scribat*, I know not if he writes.

Obs. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence; as, *Ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, sive, at, sed, verum, nam, quandoquidem, quocirca, quare, sin, siquidem, praterquam, &c.*: some stand in the second place; as, *Autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim*: and some may indifferently be put either first or second; as, *Etiam, equidem, licet, quamvis, quanquam, tamen, attamen, namque, quod, quia, quoniam, quippe, utpote, ut, uti, ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, proinde, propterea*.

re, se, ni, nisi, &c. Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive*, *Subjunctive*, and *Common*. To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que, ve, ne*, which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics*, because, when put after long syllables, they make the accent incline to the foregoing syllable; as in the following verse,

Indoctusque pilæ, discive, trochive, quiescit. *Horat.*

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation; thus,

Arbutos fetus montanæque fraga legebant. *Ovid.*

SENTENCES.

A SENTENCE is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together; as, *I read. The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction*.

Words in sentences have a twofold relation to one another; namely, that of *Concord* or *Agreement*; and that of *Government* or *Influence*.

Concord, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

Government, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

General principles of SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence, there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.

3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.

4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood.

5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.

6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition; or is placed before the infinitive.

7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.

8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.

9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

All Sentences are either SIMPLE or COMPOUND.

Syntax therefore may be divided into two parts, according to the general division of sentences.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A Simple Sentence is that which has but one nominative; and one finite verb, *that is*, a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mode.

In a simple sentence, there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The **SUBJECT** is the word which marks the person or thing spoken of.

The **ATTRIBUTE** expresses what we affirm concerning the subject; as,

The boy reads his lesson: Here, "the boy," is the *Subject* of discourse, or the person spoken of; "reads his lesson," is the *Attribute*, or what we affirm concerning the subject. *The diligent boy reads his lesson carefully at home*. Here we have still the same subject, "the boy," marked by the character of "diligent," added to it; and the same attribute, "reads his lesson," with the circumstances of manner and place subjoined, "carefully," "at home."

CONCORD.

The following words agree together in sentences, 1. A substantive with a substantive. 2. An adjective with a substantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

1. *Agreement of one Substantive with another.*

RULE 1. Substantives signifying the same thing, agree in case; as,

Cicero orator, Cicero the Orator; *Cicerōnis oratoris*, Of Cicero the Orator. *Urbis Athēnæ*, The city Athens; *Urbis Athēnārum*, Of the city Athens.

2. *Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.*

2. An Adjective agrees with a Substantive, in gender, number, and case; as,

Bonus vir, a good man ;

Boni viri, good men.

Femina casta, a chaste woman ;

Feminae castae, chaste women.

Dulce pomum, a sweet apple ;

Dulcia poma, sweet apples.

And so through all the cases and degrees of comparison.

This rule applies also to Adjective pronouns and Participles ; as,
Meus liber, my book ; *ager colendus*, a field to be tilled.

Obf. 1. The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive ; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender ; as, *triste*, sc. *negotium*, a sad thing, Virg. ; *Tuum scire*, the same with, *tua scientia*, thy knowledge, Perf. We sometimes however find the substantive understood in the feminine ; as, *Non posteriores feram*, sup. *partes*, Ter.

Obf. 2. An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive ; as, *Certus amicus*, A sure friend : *Bona ferina*, Good venison : *Summum bonum*, The chief good : *Homo* being understood to *amicus*, *caro* to *ferina*, and *negotium* to *bonum*.

Obf. 3. These adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, *cetera*, usually signify *the first part*, *the middle part*, &c. of any thing ; as, *Media nox*, the middle part of the night ; *Summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

Obf. 4. Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable, and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first ; as, *vir clarissimus*, *res praestantissima*, &c.

3. Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.

3. A Verb agrees with the Nominative before it in number and person ; as,

Ego lego, I read ;

Nos legimus, We read.

Tu scribis, Thou writest or you write ; *Vos scribitis*, Ye or you write.

Præceptor docet, The master teaches ; *Præceptores docent*, Masters teach.

And so through all the modes, tenses, and numbers.

Obf. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person ; *tu* and *vos* of the second person ; *ille* and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person in Latin is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction ; as, *Tu es patronus*, *tu pater*, Ter. *Tu legis*, *ego scribo*.

Obf. 2. An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative ; as, *Mentiri est turpe*, to lie is base ; *Divina perlitatum tenuit dictatorem* ; The sacrifice not being attended

mibi esse beato, I may be happy ; or, *licet mihi esse beatum*, me being understood ; thus, *licet mihi (me) esse beatum*. The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied ; as, *Licet esse beatum*, One may be happy, *scil. alicui* or *homini*.

Obs. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose ; thus, *Retulit Ajax Jovis esse pronepos*, for *Se esse pronepotem* ; Ovid. *Cum pateris sapiens emendatusque vocari*, for *te vocari sapientem*, &c. Horat. Ep. 1. 16. *Acceptum refero versibus esse nocens* ; Ovid. *Tantumque putavit jam bonus esse socer* ; Lucan.

GOVERNMENT.

I. The GOVERNMENT of SUBSTANTIVES.

VI. One Substantive governs another in the genitive, (*when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former ;*) as,

Amor Dei, The love of God ; *Lex nature*, The law of nature.
Domus Cæsaris, The house of Cæsar, or Cæsar's house.

Obs. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective ; as *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house ; *Filius heri* or *herilis*, a master's son : and among the poets, *Labor Hercules*, for *Herculis* ; *Ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

Obs. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or a passive sense ; thus, *Amor Dei*, The love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him : So *Caritas patris*, signifies either, The affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense ; thus, *Timor Dei*, always implies *Deus timetur* ; and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*.

Obs. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood ; as, *HecTORis Andromache*, *scil. uxor* ; *Ventum est ad vestæ*, *scil. ædem* or *templum* ; *Ventum est tria millia*, *scil. passuum*, three miles.

Obs. 4. We find the dative often used after a verb for the genitive, particularly among the poets ; as, *Ei corpus porrigitur*, His body is extended ; Virg.

Obf. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions; *as*, *Amicitia*, *inimicitia*, *pax*, *cum aliquo*; *Amor in, vel erga*, *aliquem*; *Gaudium de re*; *Cura de aliquo*; *Mentio illius, vel de illo*; *Quies ab armis*; *Fumus ex incendiis*, &c.

Obf. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of*; *as*, *Descensus Averni*, the descent *to* *Avernus*; *Prudentia juris*, skill *in* the law.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns: *as*, *pars mei*, a part of me.

So also adjective pronouns when used as substantives, or having a noun understood; *as*, *Liber ejus, illius, hujus*, &c. The book of him, or his book, *sc. hominis*: The book of her, or her book, *sc. feminae*. *Libri eorum, v. earum*, Their books. *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whose book; *Quorum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei*; *pater noster*, not *nostri*: *suum jus*, not *sui*.

When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, nostrum, vestrum*; but we use their possessives, when an active sense is expressed; *as*, *Amor mei*, The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved; *amor meus*, my love, that is, the love wherewith I love. We find however the possessives sometimes used passively, and their primitives taken actively; *as*, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee, *Ter. Labor mei*, My labour, *Plaut.*

The possessives *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive; *as*, *Pectus tuum hominis simplicis*, *Cic. 2. Phil. Noster duorum eventus*, *Liv. Tuum ipsius studium*, *Cic. Mea scripta timentis*, &c. *Hor. Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, *Cic. Id maxime quemque decet, quod est cujusque suum maxime. Id.*

The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used, when the action of the verb is reflected, as it were, upon its nominative; *as*, *Cato interfecit se*; *Miles defendit suam vitam*; *Dicit se scripturum esse*. We find however *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind; *as*, *Deum agnoscimus ex operibus ejus*, *Cic. Persuadent Rauracis, ut una cum iis proficiscantur, for una secum. Caf.*

VII. If the latter Substantive have an Adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, they may be put in the genitive or ablative; *as*,

Vir summæ prudentiæ, or summâ prudentiâ, A man of great wisdom.
Puer probæ indolis, or probâ indole, A boy of a good disposition.

M

Obf. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive, but by some preposition understood; as, *cum, de, ex, in, &c.* Thus, *Vir summâ prudentiâ*, is the same with *vir cum summa prudentia*.

Obf. 2. In some phrases the genitive is only used; as, *Magni formica laboris*, *The laborious ant*: *Vir imi subsellii*, *homo minimi pretii*, *a person of the lowest rank*. *Non multi cibi hospitem accipies*, *sed multi joci*, *Cic.* *Ager trium jugerum*. In others only the ablative; as, *Es bono animo*, *Be of good courage*. *Mira sum alacritate ad litigandum*, *Cic.* *Capite aperto est*, *His head is bare*; *obvoluto*, *covered*. *Capite et supercilio semper est rasus*, *Id.* *Mulier magno natu*, *Liv.* Sometimes both are used in the same sentence; as, *Adolescens eximiâ spe, summæ virtutis*, *Cic.* The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive.

Obf. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative: thus, we say either, *Vir præstantis ingenii*, or *præstanti ingenio*; or *Vir præstans ingenio*, and sometimes *præstans ingenii*. Among the poets the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum*, or *quod ad* being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdoche*; as, *Miles fractus membra*, *i. e. fractus secundum*, or *quod ad membra*, or *hâbens membra fracta*. *Os humerosque deo similis*. *Virg.*

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

VIII. An Adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecuniæ, *Much money*. *Quid rei est?* *What is the matter?*

Obf. 1. This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers; as, *Plus eloquentiæ, minus sapientiæ, tantum fidei, id negotii*; *Quicquid erat patrum, reos diceret*, *Liv.*

Obf. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum, &c.* To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam, &c.* *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive, and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

Obf. 3. *Nihil*, and these neuter pronouns, *quid, aliquid, &c.* elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive; as, *nihil sinceri*, *no sincerity*; but seldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* and *e*; as, *Nequid hostile timerent*, not *hostilis*: We find however *quicquid civilis*, *Liv. 5. 3.*

Obf. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural; as, *Angusta viarum, Opaca*

logorum, Telluris aperta, loca being understood. So *Amara curarum, acuta belli, sc. negotia, Horat.* An adjective indeed of any gender may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood; as, *Amicus Cæsaris, Patria Ulyssis, &c.*

Opus and Usus.

IX. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative; as,

Est opus pecuniâ, There is need of money; Usus viribus, Need of strength.

Obf. 1. *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition, as *pro* or the like, understood. They sometimes also, although more rarely, govern the genitive; as, *Lectiois opus est, Quint.* *Operæ usus est, Liv.*

Obf. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective; as, *Dux nobis opus est, We need a general, Cic.* *Dices nummos mihi opus esse. Id.* *Nobis exempla opus sunt. Id.*

Obf. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle; as, *Opus maturato, Need of haste; Opus consulto, Need of deliberation; Quid facto usus est? Ter.* The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it; as, *Mibi opus fuit Hirtio convento, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius, Cic.*

Obf. 4. *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Siquid forte sit, quod opus sit sciri, Cic.* *Nunc tibi opus est, ægram ut te adsumules, Plaut.* It is often placed *absolutely*, i. e. without depending on any other word; as, *sic opus est, si opus sit, &c.*

II. GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES:

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

X. Verbal adjectives, or such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

Avidus gloriæ, Desirous of glory. Ignarus fraudis, Ignorant of fraud. Memor beneficiorum, Mindful of favors.

To this rule belong, I. Verbal adjectives in AX; as, *capax, edax, ferax, tenax, pertinax, &c.* and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS; as, *amans, appetens, cupiens, insölens, sciens; consultus, doctus, expertus, insuetus, insolitus, &c.* II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind; 1. Desire; as, *avarus, cupidus, studiosus, &c.* 2. Knowledge, ignorance and doubting; as, *callidus, certus,*

certior, conscius, gnarus, peritus, prudens, &c. Ignarus, incertus, inscius, imprudens, imperitus, immemor, rudis; ambiguus, dubius, suspensus, &c. 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary; as, *anxius, curiosus, sollicitus, providus, diligens; incuriosus, securus, negligens, &c.* 4. Fear and confidence; as, *formidolosus, pavidus, timidus, trepidus; impavidus, interritus, intrepidus.* 5. Guilt and innocence; as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus; innoxius, innoens, insons.*

To these add many adjectives of various significations; as, *æger animi; ardens, audax, averfus, diversus, egrægius, erectus, falsus, felix, fessus, furens, ingens, integer, lætus, præstans, animi; modicus viti; integer vitæ; seri studiorum, Hor. But we say æger pedibus, ardens in cupiditatibus, præstans doctrinâ, modicus cultu; Lætus negotio, de re, or propter rem, &c. and never æger pedum, &c.*

Obs. 1. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles; thus, *patiens algoris*, able to bear cold; and *patiens algorem*, actually bearing cold. So *amans virtutis*, and *amans virtutem*; *doctus grammaticæ*, skilled in grammar; *doctus grammaticam*, one who has learned it.

Obs. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction, as, *avidus in pecuniis, Cic. Avidior ad rem, Ter. Jure consultus & peritus, or juris, Cic. Rudis literarum, in jure civili, Cic. Rudis arte, ad mala, Ovid. Doctus Latine, Latinis, literis, Cic. Assuetus labore, in omnia, Liv. Mansæ herili, Virg. Insuetus moribus Romanis, in the dat. Liv. Laboris, ad onera portanda, Cas. Defectus bello, & triumphis in the dat. or abl. rather the dat. Virg. Anxius, sollicitus, securus, de re aliqua; diligens in, ad, de, Cic. Negligens in aliquem, in or de re: Reus de vi, criminibus, Cic. Certior factus de re, rather than rei, Cic.*

Obs. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causa*, in *re*, or in *negotio*, or some such word understood; as, *Cupidus laudis*, i. e. *causa* or in *re laudis*, desirous of praise, that is, on account of, or in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive; thus, *studiosus pecuniæ*, fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniæ*, having a fondness for money.

XI. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

*Aliquis philosophorum,
Senior fratrum,*

Some one of the philosophers.
The elder of the brothers.

<i>Doctissimus Romanorum,</i>	The most learned of the Romans.
<i>Quis nostrum?</i>	Which of us?
<i>Una musarum,</i>	One of the muses.
<i>Octavus sapientum,</i>	The eighth of the wise men.

Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them, in English, *of* or *among*; as, *alius, nullus, solus, &c. quis* and *qui*, with their compounds: also Comparatives, Superlatives, and some Numerals; as, *unus, duo, tres; primus, secundus, &c.* To these add *multi, pauci, plerique, medius*.

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former; as, *Indus fluminum maximus, Cic.* Rarely with the latter; as, *Delphinus animalium velocissimum, Plin.* The genitive here is governed by *ex numero*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number; as, *Nulla sororum*, scil. *soror*, or *ex numero sororum*.

Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de, e, ex*, or *in*; as, *Unus de fratribus*; or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter*; as, *Pulcherrimus ante omnes, for omnium, Virg.* *Primus inter omnes, Id.*

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis, Cic.* *Maximus stirpis, Liv.* *Ultimos orbis, Hor.*

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used, when we speak of two; Superlatives when we speak of more than two; as, *Major fratrum*, The elder of the brothers, meaning *two*; *Maximus fratrum*, The eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two*. In like manner, *uter, alter, neuter*, are applied with regard to two; *quis, unus, alius, nullus* with regard to three or more; as, *Uter vestrum*, Whether or which of you two; *Quis vestrum*, Which of you three: but these are sometimes taken promiscuously the one for the other.

2. Adjectives governing the Dative.

XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative; as,

<i>Utilis bello,</i>	Profitable for war.
<i>Perniciosus reipublicæ,</i>	Hurtful to the commonwealth.
<i>Similis patri,</i>	Like to his father.

Or thus, *any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English.*

To this rule belong ;

1. Adjectives of profit or disprofit ; *as*, Benignus, bonus, commodus, felix, fructuosus, prosper, saluber.——Calamitosus, damnosus, dirus, exitiosus, funestus, incommodus, malus, noxius, perniciosus, pestifer.

2. Of pleasure or pain ; *as*, Acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratiosus, jucundus, lætus, suavis.——Acerbus, amarus, insuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus, tristis.

3. Of friendship or hatred ; *as*, Addictus, æquus, amicus, benevolus, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus, fidelis, lenis, mitis, propitius.——Adversus, æmulus, asper, crudelis, contrarius, insensus, infestus, infidus, immitis, inimicus, iniquus, invisus, invidus, iratus, odiosus, suspectus, trux.

4. Of clearness or obscurity ; *as*, Apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus, notus, perspicuus.——Ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus.

5. Of nearness ; *as*, Finitimus, propior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus.

6. Of fitness or unfitness ; *as*, Aptus, appositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus.——Ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconveniens.

7. Of ease or difficulty ; *as*, Facilis, levis, obvius, pervius.——Difficilis, arduus, gravis, laboriosus, periculofus, invius. To these add such as signify propensity or readiness ; *as*, Pronus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, paratus.

8. Of equality or inequality ; *as*, Æqualis, æquævus, par, compar, suppar.——Inæqualis, impar, dispar, discors. Also of likeness or unlikeness, *as*, Similis, æmulus, geminus.——Dissimilis, absonus, alienus, diversus, discolor.

9. Several adj. compounded with CON ; *as*, Cognatus, concolor, concoors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consonus, conveniens, contiguus, continuus, continens. Contiguous ; *as*, *Maris ær continens est, Cic.*

To these add many other adjectives of various significations ; *as*, Obnoxius, subjectus, supplex, credulus, absurdus, decorus, deformis, præsto, secundus, &c.—particularly,

Verbals in **BILIS** and **DUS** govern the dative ; *as*,

Amandus vel amabilis omnibus, To be loved by all men.

So mors est terribilis malis ; Optabilis omnibus pax ; Adtribenda est nobis diligentia, Cic. Semel omnibus calcanda est via leibis, Hor. Also some participles of the perfect tense ; *as*, *Bella matribus detestata*, hated by, Hor.

Verbals in **DUS** are often construed with the prep. *a* ; *as*, *Deus est venerandus & colendus a nobis, Cic.* Perfect participles are usually so ; *as*, *Mors Crassi est a multis despecta*, rather than *multis despecta, Cic. A te invitatus, rogatus, predictus, &c. hardly ever tibi.*

Obs. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of speech; but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle *to* in English is often to be supplied; as, *Similis patri* Like his father, *to* being understood.

Obs. 2. Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them; as, *Ille est pater, dux, vel filius mihi*, He is father, leader, or son to me: so, *Præsidium reis, decus amicis, &c.* Hor. *Exitium pecori*, Virg. *Virtutibus hostis*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive; *Affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, equalis, contrarius*, and *adversus*: as, *Similis tibi*, or *tui*; *Superstes patri* or *patris*; *Conscijs facinori* or *facinoris*. *Conscijs* and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*. We say, *Similes, dissimiles, pares, dispares, aequales, communes, inter se*: *Par & communis cum aliquo*. *Civitas secum ipsa discors*; *discordes ad alia*. Liv.

Obs. 4. Adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition; as,

Utilis, inutilis, optus, ineptus, accommodatus, idoneus, babilis, inabilis, opportunus, conveniens, &c. alicui rei, or *ad aliquid*. Many other adjectives governing the dat. are likewise construed with prepositions; as, *Attentus quaesitis*, Hor. *Attentus ad rem*, Ter.

Obs. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one. I. Some are usually construed with the dative only; as, *Affabilis, arrogans, asper, carus, difficilis, fidelis, invidus, iratus, offensus, suspectus, ALICUI*. II. Some with the preposition *in* and the accusative; as, *Acerbus, animatus, beneficus, graciosus, injuriosus, liberalis, mendax, misericors, officiosus, pius, impius, prolixus, severus, sordidus, torvus, vebemens, IN ALIQUEM*. III. Some either with the dative, or with the accus. and the preposition *in*, *ERGA*, or *ADVERSUS* going before; as, *Contumax, criminosus, durus, exitiabilis, gravis, hospitalis, implacabilis*, (and perhaps also *inexorabilis* & *intolerabilis*,) *iniquus, savus, ALICUI* or *IN ALIQUEM*. *Benevolus, benignus, molestus, ALICUI*, or *ERGA ALIQUEM*. *Mitis, comis, IN*, or *ERGA ALIQUEM*, and *ALICUL*. *Pervicax ADVERSUS ALIQUEM*. *Crudelis IN ALIQUEM*; seldom *ALICUL*. *Amicus, æmulus, insensus, infestus, ALICUI*, seldom *IN ALIQUEM*. *Gratus ALICUI*, or *IN*, *ERGA*, *ADVERSUS ALIQUEM*. We say *alienus alicui* or *alicujus*; but oftener *ab aliquo*, and sometimes *aliquo* without the preposition.

AUDIENS is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat*, he was obedient to the king; not *regis*; *Dicto audiens fuit iussu magistratum*, Nep. *Nobis dicto audientes sunt*, not *dictis*, Cic.

Obs. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative; as,

Pronus, propensus, proclivis, celer, tardus, piger, &c. ad iram, or *in iram*.

Obs. 7. *Propior* and *proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accusative; as, *Propior montem*, scil. *ad*. Sall. *Proximus finem*, Liv.

Obs. 8. *IDEM* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti*, Hor. *Jupiter omnibus idem*, Virg. *Eadem illis censemus*, Cic. But in prose we commonly find, *idem qui, et, ac, atque*; and also *ut, cum*; as, *Peripatetici quondam iidem erant qui Academici*, Cic. *Est animus erga te, idem ac fuit*, Ter. *Dianam & Lunam eandem esse putant*, Cic. *Idem faciunt, ut, &c.* In eodem loco mecum, Cic. But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum*; as, *Luna eadem est cum Diana*.

We likewise say, *alius ac, atque* or *et*; and so sometimes *similis & par*.

3. Adjectives governing the Ablative.

XIII. These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *præditus*, *captus*, and *fretus*; also *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

Dignus honore, Worthy of honor. *Captus oculis*, Blind. [strength. *Contentus parvo*, Content with little. *Fretus viribus*, Trusting to his *Præditus virtute*, Endued with virtue. *Ortus regibus*, Descended of kings.

So *generatus*, *creatus*, *erectus*, *prognatus*, *orinundus*, *procreatus*, *regibus*.

Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood: as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum*; *Fretus viribus*, scil. *in*, &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina*, Sallust. *Editus de nympba*, Ovid.

Obs. 2. *Dignus*, *indignus*, and *contentus*, have sometimes the genitive after them; as, *dignus avorum*, Virg. So *Maestæ esto*, or *maestæ esote virtutis* or *virtute*, Increase in virtue, or Go on and prosper; *Juberem maestæ virtute esse*, Liv. In the last example *maestæ* seems to be used adverbially.

4. Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.

XIV. Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Plenus iræ or *iræ*, Full of anger. *Inops rationis* or *ratione*, Void of reason.

So *Non inopes temporis, sed prodigi sumus*, Sen. *Lentulus non verbis inops*, Cic. *Dei plena sunt omnia*, Cic. *Maxima quæque domus servis est plena superbis*, Juv. *Res est solliciti plena timoris amor*, Ovid. *Amor & melle & felle est sæcundissimus*, Plaut. *Secunda virorum paupertas fugitur*, Lucan. *Omnium consiliorum ejus particeps*, Curt. *Homo ratione particeps*, Cic. *Nihil insidiarum vacuum*, Id. *Vacuas oedis habete manus*, Ovid.

Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. with the genitive only; as, *Benignus, exsors, impos, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prælargus.*

2. With the ablative only: *Beatus, differtus, frugifer, mutilus, tentus, distentus, tumidus, turgidus.*

3. With the genitive more frequently: *Compos, consors, egenus, exhæres, expers, fertilis, indigus, parvus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis.*

4. With the ablative more frequently: *Abundans, cassus, extorris, fortis, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejunos, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onustus, orbus, pollens, solutus, truncus, viduus, and captus.*

5. With both promiscuously: *Copiosus, dives, fecundus, ferax, immunis, inanis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber,*

6. With a preposition; as, *Copiosus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus, à re aliqua; for quod ad rem aliquam attinet, in, or with respect to any thing.* *Extorris ab solo patrio, banished; Orba ab optimatibus concio, Liv. So pauper, tenuis, fecundus, modicus, parvus in re aliqua. Immunis, inanis, liber, nudus, solutus, vacuus à re aliqua. Potens ad rem, & in re.*

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

§ 1. VERBS GOVERNING ONLY ONE CASE.

1. Verbs which govern the Genitive.

XV. Sum, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive; as,

Est regis, It belongs to the king, It is the part or property of a king.

So *Insipientis est dicere, non putâram*, It is the part or property of a fool, &c. *Militum est suo duci parere*, It is the part or duty of soldiers, &c. *Laudare se vani; vituperare stulti est. Sen. Hominis est errare; Arrogantis est negligere, quid de se quisque sentiat. Cic. Pecus est Melibœi, Virg. Hæc sunt hominis; Ter. Pauperis est numerare pecus, Ovid. Temeritas est florentis ætatis, prudentia senectutis, Cic.*

¶ *Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, are excepted; as,

Tuum est, It is your duty; *Scio tuum esse*, I know that it is your duty.

Obs. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*. Other possessives are also construed in this manner; as, *Est regium, est humanum*, the same with *est regis, est hominis*.

Obs. 2. Here some substantive must be understood; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus, &c.* which are sometimes expressed; as, *Munus est principum; Tuum est hoc munus, Cic. Neutiquam officium liberi esse hominis puto, Ter.* In some cases the preceding substantive may be repeated; as, *Hic liber est (liber) fratris.* In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these; *Ea sunt modo gloriosa, neque patrandi belli, scil. causa or facta, Sall. Nihil tam æquandæ libertatis est, for ad æquandam libertatem pertinet, Liv.*

Obs. 3. We say, *Hoc est tuum munus, or tui muneris:* So *mor est vel suis, or moris, or in more, Cic.*

XVI. *Miserere, miseresco, and satago,* govern the genitive; as,

*Miserere civium tuorum,
Satago rerum suarum,*

Pity your countrymen.
He is sufficiently employed about his
own affairs.

Obs. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify some affection of the mind; as, *Ango, decipior, desipio, discrucior, excrucio, fallo & fallor, fastidio, invideo, lætor, miror, pendeo, studeo, vereor;* as, *Ne angas te animi, Plant. Laborum decipitur, Hor. Discrucior animi, Ter. Pendet mihi animus, pendeo animi, vel animo: but we always say, Pendemus animis, not animorum, are in suspense, Cic. Jactitæ prius mirer, Virg.* In like manner, *Abstineo, desino, desisto, quiesco, regno: likewise, adipiscor, condico, credo, frustror, furo, laudo, libero, levo, participo, prohibeo: as, Abstincto irarum; Desine querelarum; Regnavit populorum, Hor. Desistere pugnae, Virg. Quarum rerum condixit, Liv.*

But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed; thus, *Angor, desipio, discrucior, fallor, animo. Hoc animum meum excruciat. Fastidio, miror, vereor, aliquem, vel aliquid. Lætor aliquâ re.* Some of them are joined with the infinitive; or with *quod, ut, ne,* and the subjunctive.

In like manner we usually say, *Desino aliquid, & ab aliquo, to give over; Desisto incepto, de negotio, ab illa mente; Quiesco a labore; Regnare in equitibus, oppidis, sc. in, Cic. Per urbes, Virg. Adipisci id; Frustrari in re; Furere de aliquo, Cic.*

Obs. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs; thus, *Miserere fratris, scil. causâ; Angor animi, scil. dolore, or anxietate.*

2. VERBS governing the Dative.

XVII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the sign TO or FOR after it in English; as,

<i>Finis venit imperio,</i>	An end is come to the empire, Liv.
<i>Animus redit hostibus,</i>	Courage returns to the enemy, Id.
<i>Tibi seris, tibi metis,</i>	You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself, Plaut.

So, *Non nobis solum nati sumus*, Cic. *Multa male eveniunt bonis*, Id. *Sol lucet etiam sceleratis*, Sen. *Hæret lateri lethalis arundo*, Virg.

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not always rendered in English by *to* or *for*; nor are these particles always the sign of the dative in Latin, it will be necessary to be more particular.

I. *Sum*, and its compounds, govern the dative, (except *possum*;) as,

<i>Præfuit exercitui,</i>	He commanded the army.
<i>Adfuit precibus,</i>	He was present at prayers.

¶ *EST* taken for *Habeo*, *to have*, governs the dative of a person: as,

<i>Est mihi liber,</i>	A book is to me, that is, I have a book.
<i>Sunt mihi libri,</i>	Books are to me, i. e. I have books.
<i>Dico libros esse mihi,</i>	I say that I have books.

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum*; *habeo libros*. In like manner *desum* instead of *careo*; as, *Liber desit mihi*, I want a book; *Libri defunt mihi*; *Scio libros deesse mihi*, &c.

II. Verbs compounded with *SATIS*, *BENE*, and *MALE*, govern the dative; as,

Satisfacio, satisfido, benefacio, benedico, benèvolo, malefacio, maledico tibi, &c.

III. Many Verbs compounded with these nine prepositions, *AD*, *ANTE*, *CON*, *IN*, *INTER*, *OB*, *PRÆ*, *SUB*, and *SUPER*, govern the dative; as,

1. *Accedo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adno, adnato, adequito, adhæreo, adsto, adstipulor, advolvor, affulgeo, allabor, allaboro, annuo, appareo, applaudo, appropinquo, arrideo, aspiro, assentior, assideo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo.*

2. *Antecello, anteco, antesto, anteverto.*

3. *Colludo, concino, consono, convivo.*

4. *Incumbo, indormio, inhiò, ingemisco, inhæreo, insideo, insto, insisto, insudo, insulto, invigilo, illacrymo, illudo, imminco, immorior, immoror, impendeo.*

5. *Intervenio, intermico, intercedo, intercido, interjaceo.*

6. *Obrepro, obluctor, obtrecto, obstrepro, obmurmuro, occumbo, occurro, occurso, obsto, obisto, obvenio.*

7. *Præcedo, præcurro, præco, præfideo, prælucco, præniteo, præsto, prævaleo, præverto.*

8. Succedo, succumbo, sufficio, suffragor, subcreasco, suboleo, subjaccio, subrepto.

9. Supervenio, supercurro, supersto.

IV. Verbs govern the dative, which signify,

1. To profit or hurt ; as,

Proficio, profum, placeo, commodo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consulo *for* prospicio. *Likewise*, Nocco, officio, incommodo, displicio, infidior.

2. To favour or assist, and the contrary ; as,

Faveo, gratulor, gratificor, grator, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adulator, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, assentor, subparasitor. *Likewise*, Auxilior, adminiculator, subvenio, succurro, patrocinator, medeor, medicor, opitulator. *Likewise*, Deroغو, detraho, invidco, zemulor.

3. To command and obey, to serve and resist ; as,

Impero, præcipio, mando, moderor, *for* modum adhibeo. *Likewise*, Parco, ausculto, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, morem gero, morigeror, obsecundo. *Likewise*, Famulor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor. *Likewise*, Repugno, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, refragor, adverfor.

4. To threaten and to be angry ; as,

Minor, comminor, interminor, irascor, succenseo.

5. To trust ; as, Fido, confido, credo, diffido.

To these add Nubo, excello, hæreo, supplico, cedo, despéro, operor, præstôlor, prevaricor, recipio, *to promise* ; renuncio ; respondeo, *to answer or satisfy* ; tempero, studeo, vaco, *to apply* ; convicior.

Exc. *Fubeo, juvo, ludo, and offendendo*, govern the accusative.

Obs. 1. Verbs governing the dative only are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative have also an accusative expressed or understood.

Obs. 2. Most verbs governing the dative only, have been enumerated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed ; and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative ; as, Levo, erigo, alo, nutrio, amo, diligo, vexo, crucio, averfor, &c. aliquem, *not* alicui.

Obs. 3. Many of these verbs are variously construed ; particularly such as are compounded with a preposition ; as,

Anteire, antecedere, antecellere, præcedere, præcurrere, præire, &c. alicui, or aliquem, *to go before, to excel.*

Acquiescere, rei, re, v. in re. Adequitate, portæ ; Syracusæ.

Adjacere, mari, v. mare, *to lie near.*

Adnare navibus, naves, ad naves, *to swim to.*

Adversari ei, *rarely* eum, *to oppose*.

Advolvi genibus, genua, ad genua, *to fall at one's knees*.

Advolare ei, ad eum; rostra.

Adflare rei v. homini; rem v. hominem; aliquid alicui, *to breathe upon*.

Adulari ei, v. eum. Allabi oris; aures ejus, Virg. ad exta, Liv.

Apparere consuli, *to attend*; ad solium Jovis; Res apparet mihi, *appears*.

Appropinquare Britanniz, portam, ad portam, *to approach*.

Dominari cunctis oris, Virg. in cætera animalia, *to rule over*, Ovid.

Congruere alicui, cum re aliqua, inter se, *to agree*.

Fidere, considerè alicui rei, aliqua re, in re.

Ignoscere mihi, culpæ meæ, mihi culpam.

Impendèrè alicui, aliquem, in aliquem, *to bang over*.

Incessit cura, cupido, timor ei, eum, v. in eum, *seized*.

Incumbere toro; gladium, in gladium, *to fall upon*; labori, ad laudem, ad studia, in studium, curam, cogitationem, &c. *to apply to*.

Indulgere alicui, id ei; nimio vestitu, Ter.

Inhiare auro, bona ejus, *to gape after*. Innasci agris, in agris, *to grow in*.

Inniti rei, re, in re; in aliquem, *to depend on*.

Insultare rei & homini, v. hominem; fores; patientiam ejus, in miseriam ejus; bonos, *to insult over*.

Latet res mihi, v. me, *is unknown to me*. Mederi ei; cupiditates, *to cure*.

Ministrare ei, *to serve*; arma, *to furnish*.

Moderari animo, gentibus; navim, omnia, *to rule*.

Nocere ei, *rarely* eum, Plaut.

Nubere alicui; in familiam: nupta ei & cum eo, Cic.

Obrepere ei & eum, *to creep upon*; in animos; ad honores.

Obstrepere auribus & aures. Obtrèctare ei, laudibus, ejus, *to detract from*.

Obumbrat sibi vinea; solem nubes, *shades*. Palpari alicui & aliquem.

Pascisci alicui, cum aliquo; vitam ab eo, Sall. vitam pro laude, Virg.

Præstolari alicui & aliquem.

Procumbere terræ; genibus ejus, Ovid. ad genus, Liv. ad pedes, *to fall*.

To these may be added verbs, which, chiefly among the poets, govern the dative, but in prose are usually construed with a preposition; as, 1. Contendo, certo, bello, pugno, concurro, coco, alicui, *for* eum aliquo; 2. Distare, dissentire, discrepare, dissidere, differre rei alicui, *for a* re aliqua. We also say, Contendunt, pugnant, distant, & inter se; *and* contendere, pugnare contra & adversus aliquem.

N

Obf. 4. Many verbs vary both their fignification and conftruction; as, *Timeo, metuo, formido, horreo tibi, & pro te*, I am afraid for you, or for your fafety; but *timeo, horreo te, v. a te*, I fear or dread you as an enemy: So *Confulo, profpicio, caveo tibi*, I confult or provide for your fafety; but *confulo te*, I ask your advice; *profpicio hoc*, I forefee this: *Studere aliquid*, to defire; *alicui*, to favour; *alicui rei, rem, & in re*, to apply to a thing. So, *Æmulor tibi*, I envy; *te*, I imitate; *Aufculto tibi*, I obey or listen to; *te*, I hear; *Cupio tibi*, I favour; *rem*, I defire; *Fenero, & -or tibi*, I lend you on intereft; *abs te*, I borrow; *Metuisti, ne non tibi iftic feneraret*, fhould not return with intereft, or bring ufury, Ter. And thus many other verbs, which will be afterwards explained.

Obf. 5. Verbs fignifying Motion or Tendency to a thing are conftrued with the prep. *ad*; as, *Eg, vado, curro, propero, feftino, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclino, &c. ad locum, rem, v. hominem*. Sometimes however in the poets they are conftrued with the dative; as, *It clamor cælo, for ad cælum, Virg.*

3. Verbs governing the Accufative.

XVIII. A Verb fignifying actively governs the accufative; as,

Ama Deum, Love God. *Reverere parentes*, Reverence your parents.

Obf. 1. Neuter verbs alfo govern the accufative, when the noun after them has a fignification fimilar to their own; as, *Ire iter or viam*; *Pugnare pugnam or prælium*; *Currere curfum*; *Canere cantilenam*; *Vivere vitam*; *Ludere ludum*; *Sequi feftam*; *Somniare fomnium, &c.* or when they are taken in a metaphorical fenfe; as, *Corydon ardebat Alexin*, fcil. propter, i. e. vehementer amabat, *Virg.* *Currimus æquor*, fcil. per, *Id.* So, *Comptos arift adulteri crines*, *Hor.* *Saltare Cyclopa*; *olet hircum*; *Sulcos et vineta crepat mera*, *Hor.* *Vox hominem fonat*; *Sudare mella*, *Virg.* *Si Xerxes Hellesponto juncto, et Athone perfoffo, maria ambulaviffet, terramque navigaffet*, fc. per, *Cic.* Or when they have a kind of active fenfe; as, *Clamare aliquem nomine, Virg.* *Callere jura*; *Mædere mortem*; *Horret iratum mare, Hor.*

Sometimes inftead of the accufative neuter verbs have an ablative; as, *Ire itinere*; *dolere dolore, vicem ejus*; *gaudere gaudio*; *mori v. obire morte*; *vivere vitâ*; *Ludere aleam, v. â*; *manare, pluere, rorare, stillare, sudare, aliquid vel aliquo*. *Erubescere jura, Virg.* *origine, Tacit.* *equo vehi, Curt.*

Obf. 2. Several verbs are ufed both in an active and neuter fenfe; as,

Abhorrere famam, to dread infamy, Liv. *a litibus*; *ab uxore* a meis moribus abhorret, is inconfiftent with, Cic. *duccenda, to be averfe from*: *Id.* *Abolere monumenta viri, to abate*

- isb*, Virg. *lis Cladis Caudinæ* nondum memoria aboleverat, Liv.
- Adolere penates; *to burn*, Virg.
- Ætas adolevit; *adolevit ad ætatem*, Plaut.
- Declinare iectum, *to avoid*; loco; agmen aliquo, *to remove*.
- Degenerare animos, *to weaken*; patri; a virtute majorum, *to degenerate*.
- Durare adolescentes labore, *to burden*; Res durat ad breve tempus; In ædibus durare nequeo, Plaut.
- Inclinare culpam in aliquem, *to lay*; Hos ut sequar inclinatus animus, *inclines*; acies inclinat, *v. inclinatur, gives way*.
- Obs. 3. These accusatives, hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca, &c. are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood; as, Id lacrumat, Id succenset, Ter.
- Obs. 4. The accusative is often understood. Tum prora avertit, *sc. se. Virg.* Flumina præcipitant, *sc. se, Id.* Obiit, *sc. mortem, Ter.* Cum faciam vitulâ, *sc. sacra, Virg.* Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence; as, Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridere decorum; *for dulcem sermonem, decorum risum, Hor.*

XIX. *Recordor, meminî, reminiscor, and obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive; as,

Recordor lectionis or lectionem, *I remember the lesson.*
 Obliviscor injuriæ or injuriam, *I forget an injury.*

Obs. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence; as, Memini videre virginem, Ter. Oblitus est, quid paulo ante posuisset, Cic.

Obs. 2. *Memini*, when it signifies to *make mention*, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de*; as, Memini alicujus, *v. de aliquo*. So *recordor*, when it signifies to *recollect*; as, Velim scire ecquid de te recordere, Cic.

4. Verbs governing the Ablative.

XX. Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative; as,

Abundat divitiis, *He abounds in riches.*
 Caret omni culpa, *He has no fault.*

Verbs of plenty are, *Abundo, affluo, exubero, redundo, suppedito, scaeto, &c.*; of want, *Carco, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficior, destitutor, &c.*

Obs. 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently govern the genitive; as, *Eget aries, Hor. Non tam artis indigent, quam laboris, Cic.*

Obs. 2. The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed; as, *Vacat a culpa, Liv.*

XXI. *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, govern the ablative; as,

Utitur fraude, He uses deceit. Abutitur libris, He abuses books.

To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, victio, consto, laboro*, for male me habeo, to be ill; *pascor, epulor, nitor, &c.*

Obs. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive; as, *Potiri urbis, Sal.* And we always say, *Potiri rerum*, to possess the chief command; never *rebus, imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. *Potior, fungor, vescor, epulor, and pascor*, sometimes have an accusative; as, *Potiri urbem, Cic. Munera fungi, Tacit. Pascuntur silvas, Virg.* And in ancient writers *utor, abutor, and fruor*; as, *Uti consilium, Plaut. Operam abutitur, Ter. Depasco and depascor* always take an accusative; as, *Depascitur artus, Virg.*

§ 2. VERBS GOVERNING TWO CASES.

1. Verbs governing two Datives.

XXII. *Sum* taken for *affero* (to bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Est mihi voluptati, It is, or brings a pleasure to me.

Two datives are also put after *habeo, do, verito, relinquo, tribuo, fore, ducor*, and some others; as,

Ducitur honori tibi, It is reckoned an honor to you. Id vertitur mihi vitio, I am blamed for that. So, Misit mihi muneri; Dedit mihi dono; Habet sibi laudi; Venire, occurrere auxilio alicui, Liv.

Obs. 1. Instead of the dative, we often use the nominative, or the accusative; as, *Est exitium pecori, for exitio; Dare aliquid alicui donum, or dono; Dare nuptum, or nuptui.* When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood; as, *Dare crimini ei sc. id.*

Obs. 2. The dative of the person is often to be supplied; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, praesidio, ufui, &c. scil. mihi, alicui, hominibus*, or some such word. So, *ponere, opponere, pignori, sc. alicui, to pledge;*

Cānere receptui, sc. suis militibus, to sound a retreat; Habere, curæ, quæstui, odio, voluptati, religioni, studio, ludibrio, despiciatui, &c. sc. sibi.

Obf. 3. To this rule belong forms of naming; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*, my name is Alexander; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander*; or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri*.

2. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Genitive.

XXIII. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

<i>Arguit me furti,</i>	He accuses me of theft.
<i>Meipsum inertia condemno,</i>	I condemn myself of laziness.
<i>Illum homicidii absolvunt,</i>	They acquit him of manslaughter.
<i>Monet me officii,</i>	He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are, *Accuso*, *ago*, *appello*, *arcesso*, *inquiro*, *arguo*, *defero*, *infumilo*, *postulo*, *alligo*, *altingo*; of condemning, *Damno*, *condemno*, *infamo*, *noto*; of acquitting, *Absolvo*, *libero*, *purgo*; of admonishing, *Monco*, *admonco*, *commonefacio*.

Obf. 1. Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative, with the preposition *de*; as, *Monere aliquem officii, or de officio*; *Accusare aliquem furti, or de furto*. *De vi condemnati sunt, Cic.*

Obf. 2. *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative; but in the ablative usually without a preposition; as, *Damnare, postulare, absolvere eum criminis, v. capitis*; & *crimine, vel capite*; also, *Absolvere me peccato, Liv.* And we always say, *Plectere, punire aliquem capite*, and not *capitis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

Obf. 3. Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the acc. of a person and the gen. of a thing, but the contrary; thus we say, *Culpo, reprehendo, taxo, traduco, vitupero, calumnior, criminor, excuso, &c. avaritiam alicujus*, and not *alicquem avaritiæ*. We sometimes also find *accuso, incuso, &c.* construed in this manner; as, *Accusare inertiam adolescentium*, for *adolescentes inertie*, *Cic.* *Culpam arguo, Liv.* We say, *Agere cum aliquo furti*, rather than *as quem*, to accuse one of theft, *Cic.*

Obf. 4. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc, illud, istud, id, unum, multa, &c.* as, *Monet, accuso te illud*. We seldom however say, *Errorrem te moneo*, but *erroris, or de errore*.

XXIV. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihili*; as,

<i>Æstimo te magni,</i>	<i>I value you much.</i>
-------------------------	--------------------------

Verbs of valuing are, *Æstimo*, *existimo*, *duco*, *facio*, *habeo*, *pendo*, *puto*, *taxo*. They govern several other genitives; as, *tanti*, *quantum*, *pluris*, *majoris*, *minoris*, *minimi*, *plurimi*, *maximi*, *nauci*, *pili*, *affis*, *nihili*, *teruncii*, *hujus*.

Obs. 1. *Æstimo* sometimes governs the ablative; as, *Æstimo te magno, permagno, parvo*, *scil. pretio*: and also *nihilo*. We likewise say, *Pro nihilo habeo, puto, duco*.

Obs. 2. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *confero*. as, *Hoc consulo boni, æqui bonique facio*, I take this in good part.

Obs. 3. The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood; as, *Arguere aliquem furti, scil. de crimine furti*; *Æstimo rem magni, scil. pretii, or pro re magni pretii*; *Consulo boni, i. e. statuo or censeo esse factum or munus boni viri, or animi*; *Monere aliquem officii, i. e. officii cauâ, or de re or negotio officii*.

3. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Dative.

XXV. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,

<i>Compāro Virgilium Homero,</i>	I compare Virgil to Homer.
<i>Suum cuique tribuito,</i>	Give every one his own.
<i>Narras fabulam surdo,</i>	You tell a story to a deaf man.
<i>Eripuit me morti,</i>	He rescued me from death.

Or thus, any active verb may govern the accusative and the dative, (when together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted;) as,

Legam lectionem tibi, I will read the lesson to you. *Emit librum mihi*, He bought a book for me. *Sic vos non vobis fertis aratra boves*, Virg. *Paupertas sæpe suadet mala hominibus*, advises men to do bad things, Plaut. *Imperare pecuniam, frumentum, naves, arma aliquibus*, to order, to furnish, Cæf.

Obs. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition; as, *Comparare unam rem cum alia, & ad aliam, or comparare res inter se*: *Eripuit me morti, morte, a or ex morte*: *Mittere epistolam alicui, or ad aliquem*: *Intendere telum alicui, or in aliquem*: *Incidere æri, in ære, or in ære*: and so in many others. *

Obs. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently; as,

Circumdare mania oppido, or oppidum manibus, to surround a city with walls.

Intercludere commeatum alicui, or aliquem commeatu, to intercept one's provisions.

Donare, prohibere rem alicui, or aliquem re, to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing.

Macrare hostiam Deo, or Deum hostiâ, to sacrifice.

Impertire salutem alicui, or aliquem salute, to salute one.

Interdixit Galliam Romanis, or Romanos Galliâ, he debarred the Romans from Gaul.

Induere, exuere vestem sibi, or se veste, to put on, to put off one's cloaths.

Levare dolorem alicui; dolorem alicujus; aliquem dolore, to ease one's distress.

Minari aliquid alicui, or sometimes alicui aliquo, Cic. to threaten one with any thing; Cæfari gladio, Sall.

Gratulor tibi hanc rem, hac re, in, pro, & de hac re, I congratulate you on this.

Restituere alicui sanitatem, or aliquem sanitati, to restore to health.

Aspergere labem alicui, or aliquem labe, to put an affront on one; aram sanguine. Litare Deum sacris, & sacra Deo.

Excusare se alicui & apud aliquem, de re; valetudinem ei.

Exprobare vitium ei v: in eo, to upbraid.

Occupare pecuniam alicui, & apud aliquem, i. e. pecuniam sœnori locare, to place at interest, Cic.

Opponere se morti, & ad mortem. Renunciare id ei, & ad eum.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition ad; as,

Porto, fero, lego, -as, præcipito, tollo, traho, duco, verto, incito, suscito; also Hortor, and invito, voco, provoco, animo, stimulo, con-formo, laceffo; thus, Ad laudem milites hortatur; Ad prætorem hominem traxit, Cic. But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, Inferre Deos Latio, for in Latium, Virg. Invitare aliquem hospitio, or in hospitium, Cic.

Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, Nubere alicui, scil. se; Cedere alicui, scil. locum; Detrahere alicui, scil. laudem; Ignoscere alicui, scil. culpam. And in English the particle to is often omitted; as, Dedit mihi libram, He gave me a book, for to me.

4. Verbs governing two Accusatives.

XXVI. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Poscimus te pacem,

We beg peace of thee.

Docuit me Grammaticam,

He taught me grammar.

I. Verbs of asking which govern two accusatives are, Rogo, oro, exoro, obsecro, precor, posco, reposco, flagito, &c. Of teaching, Docco, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio.

Obs. 1. Celo likewise governs two accusatives; as, Celavit me hanc rem, He concealed this matter from me; or otherwise, celavit hanc rem mihi, or celavit me de hac re.

Obs. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition: as, *Rogare rem ab aliquo*; *Docere aliquem de re*, to inform; but we do not say, *docere aliquem de grammatica*, but *grammaticam*, to teach. And we always say, with a preposition, *Peto, exigo a v. abs te*; *Percontor, scitor, sciscitor, ex or a te, or te without the preposition*; *Interrogo, consulto, te de re*; *Ut facias te obsecro*; *Exorat pacem divum, for divos, Virg.* *Instruo, instituo, formo, informo, aliquem, artibus, in the abl. without a prep.* *Imbuo cum artibus, in v. ab artibus.* Also *instruo ad rem, v. in re, ignorantiam alicujus.* *Erudire aliquem artes, de v. in re, ad rem.* *Formare ad studium, mentem studiis, studia ejus.*

Obs. 2. The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by *quod ad* or *secundum* understood.

5. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Ablative.

XXVII. Verbs of loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

Onerat naves auro,

He loads the ship with gold.

Verbs of loading are, *Onëro, cumulo, premo, opprimo, obruo*: Of unloading, *levo, exonëro, &c.* Of binding, *astringo, ligo, alligo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaqueo, &c.* Of loosing, *solvo, exsolvo, libera, laxo, expedio, &c.* Of depriving, *privo, nudo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, emungo*: Of clothing, *vestio, amicio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, sorëno, & calceo*: Of unclothing, *exuo, discingo, &c.*

Obs. 1. The preposition, by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed; as, *Solvere aliquem ex catenis, Cic.* Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied; as, *Complet naves sc. viris, mans the ships, Virg.*

Obs. 2. Several of these verbs likewise govern the genitive; as, *Adolescentem suæ temeritatis implet, Liv.* And also vary their construction; as, *Induit, exuit se vestibus, or vestes sibi.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

XXVIII. When the active governs two cases, the passive retains the latter case; as,

Accusor furti,

I am accused of theft.

Virgilius comparatur Homero,

Virgil is compared to Homer.

Doccor grammaticam,

I am taught grammar.

Navis oneratur auro,

The ship is loaded with gold.

So *Scio homines accusatum iri furti*: — *Eos ereptum iri morti, morte, a vel ex morte*; — *pueros doctum iri grammaticam*; — *rem celatum iri mihi vel me; me celatum iri de re, &c.*

Obf. 1. Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a* ; as,

Tu laudaris a me, which is equivalent to, *Ego laudo te*. *Virtus diligitur a nobis* ; *Nos diligimus virtutem*. *Gaudeo meum factum probari a te*, or *te probare meum factum* : And so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition ; as, *Marc a sole collucet*, *Cic.* *Phalaris non a paucis interiit*, *Id.* So *Cadere ab hoste* ; *Cessare a præliis* ; *Mori ab ense* ; *Pati, furari, aliquid ab aliquo*, &c. Also *Venire ab hostibus*, to be sold ; *Vapulare ab aliquo*, *Exulare ab urbe*. Thus likewise many active verbs ; as, *Sumere, petere, tollere, pellere, expectare, emere*, &c. *ab aliquo*.

The prep. is sometimes understood after passive verbs ; as, *Deseror conjuge*, *Ovid.* *Desertus suis*, *sc. a Tacit.* *Tabulâ distinguitur undâ*, *qui navigat*, *sc. ab unda*, is kept from the water by a plank, *Juv.*

The preposition *PER* is also used in the same sense with *A* ; as, *Per me defensa est respublica*, or *a me* ; *Per me restitutus* ; *Per me v. a me factum est*, *Cic.* But *PER* commonly marks the instrument, and *A* the principal efficient cause ; as, *Res agitur per creditores a rege*, *Cic.*

Obf. 2. Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets ; as,

Neque cernitur ulli, for *ab ullo*, *Virg.* *Vix audior ulli*, *Ovid.* *Scriberis Vario*, for *a Vario*, *Hor.* *Honesti bonis viris quærentur*, for *a viris*, *Cic.* *Videor*, to seem, always governs the dative ; as, *Videris mihi*, You seem to me : But we commonly say, *Videris a me*, You are seen by me ; although not always ; as, *Nulla tuarum audita mihi*, *neque visa sororum*, for *a me*, *Virg.*

Obf. 3. *Induor, amicio, cingor, accingor*, also *exuor* and *discingor*, are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice ; as, *Induitur vestem*, or *veste*.

Obf. 4. Neuter verbs are for the most part only used impersonally in the passive voice ; unless when they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own ; as, *Pugna pugnata est*, *Cic.* *Bellum militabitur*, *Horat.* Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely ; as, *Statur, fletur, curritur, vivitur, venit*, &c. *a nobis*, *ab illis*, &c. We are standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me*, vel *ab aliquo* ; I or any person may live well. *Provisum est nobis optime a Deo* ; *Reclamatum est ab omnibus*, *att. cried out against it*, *Cic.*

They also govern the same cases, as when used personally ; as, *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur*, *ut supplicum miscereatur*, *Cic.* Except the accusative : For in these phrases, *Itur Athenas*, *pugnatum est biduum*, *dormitur totam noctem*, the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find, however, *Tota mihi dormitur hyems* ; *Noctes vigilantur amaræ* ; *Oscanus raris ab orbe nostro navibus aditur*, *Tacit.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

XXIX. An Impersonal verb governs the dative ; as,
Expedit reipublicæ, It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative ; as,

Favetur mihi, I am favoured, and not *Ego faveor.* So *Nocetur mihi,* imperatur mihi, &c. We find however, *Hæc ego procurare imperor ; Ego cur invidetur, for imperatur, invidetur mihi,* *Hor.*

Obs. 1. These verbs, *Potest, cœpit, incipit, definit, debet, and solet,* are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs ; as,

Non potest credi tibi, You cannot be believed ; *Mihi non potest noceri,* I cannot be hurt ; *Negat jucunde posse vivi sine virtute,* *Cic.* *Per virtutem potest iri ad astra.* *Aliorum laudi & gloriæ invideri solet,* The praise and glory of others use to be envied, *Id.*

Obs. 2. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally ; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res, vel de hac re, vel hujus rei, scilicet memoria ;* This thing came into my mind. *Est curæ mihi hæc res, vel de hac re.* *Doleo, vel dolet mihi, id factum esse.*

Obs. 3. The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English ; as, It rains, it shines, &c. And in Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to Impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative ; as, *Nobis non licet peccare, the same with peccatum ; Omnibus bonis expedit rempublicam esse salvam, i. e. Salus reipublicæ expedit omnibus bonis, Cic.* *Accidit, evenit, contigit, ut ibi essemus.* These nominatives, *hoc, illud, id, idem, quod, &c.* are sometimes joined to Impersonal verbs ; as, *Idem mihi licet, Cic.* *Eadem licent, Catull.*

Obs. 4. The dative is often understood ; as, *Faciat quod libet, scilicet tibi, Ter.* *Stat casus renovare omnes, scilicet mihi,* I am resolved, *Virg.*

Exc. 1. *REFERT* and *INTEREST* require the genitive ; as,

Refert patris, It concerns my father. *Interest omnium,* It is the interest of all.

¶ But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra,* are put in the accusative plural neuter ; as,

Non mea refert,

It does not concern me.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea, tua, sua, &c.* to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either *cujus interest, and quorum interest ; or cuja interest, from cujus, a, um.*

Obs. 2. *Refert* and *interest* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil, &c.* also with common nouns ; and with these genitives, *Tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris ;* as, *Hoc parvi refert ; Illud mea magni interest, Cic.* *Usque adeo magni refert studium, Lucr.* *Incessus in grvida, refert, Plin.*

They are frequently construed with these adverbs, *Tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, infinitum, parum, maxime, vehementer, minime, &c.* *as, Faciam, quod maxime reipublicæ interesse iudicabo, Cic.* Sometimes instead of the genit. they take the accusative with the prep. *ad*; *as, Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert, Persæ quid rerum gerant? Of what importance is it? &c. Plant Magni ad honorem nostrum interest, Cic.* rarely the dative; *as, Dic, quid referat intra naturæ fines viventi, &c. Hor.* Sometimes they are placed absolutely; *as, Magnopere interest opprimi Dolobellam, it is of great importance, Cic.* *Permultum interest, qualis primus aditus sit, Id.* *Adeone est fundata leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quam qui sim, magis referat? Liv.* *Plurimum enim intererit, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus instituas, Juv.*

Obs. 3. The genitive after *refert* and *interest* is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea, tua, sua, &c.* likewise agree; *as, Interest Ciceronis, i. e. est inter negotia Ciceronis: Refert patris, i. e. refert se hæc res ad negotia patris: So interest mea est inter negotia mea.*

Exc. II. These five *MISERET, POENITET, PUNIT, TÆDET,* and *PIGET,* govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing; *as,*

Miseret me tui, I pity you. Tædet me vita, I am weary of life. Punitet me peccati, I repent of my sin.

Obs. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; *as, Miseret me tui, that is, negotium or misratio tui miseret me.*

Obs. 2. An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; *as, Pœnitet me peccasse, or quod peccaverim. The accusative is frequently understood; as, Scelerum si bene pœnitet, scil. nos. Horat.*

Obs. 3. *Miseret, pœnitet, &c.* are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc, id, quod, &c.* *as, Ipse sui miseret, Lucr.; Nonne hæc te pudet? Ter. Nihil, quod pœnitere possit, facias, Cic.*

We sometimes find *miseret* joined with two accusatives, *as, Menedemi vicem miseret me, scil. secundum, or quod ad. Ter.*

Obs. 4. The preterites of *miseret, pudet, tædet,* and *piget,* when used in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active; *as, Miserritum est me tuarum fortunarum, Ter.* We likewise find *miserescit* and *miseretur* used impersonally; *as, Miserefcit me tui, Ter.; Misereatur te fratrum; Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum miserriti potest, Cic.*

Exc. III. *DECET, DELECTAT, JUVAT,* and *OPORTET,* govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive; *as,*

*Delectat me studere,
Non decet te rixari,*

*It delights me to study.
It does not become you to scold.*

Obs. 1. These verbs are sometimes used personally; *as*, *Parvum parva decent*, *Hor.* *Est aliquid quod non oporteat, etiam si liceat*, *Cic.* *Hæc facta ab illo oportebant*, *Ter.*

Obs. 2. *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative; *as*, *Ita nobis decet*, *Ter.*

Obs. 3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood; *as*,

Sibi quisque consulat oportet, *Cic.* Or with the perfect participle *esse* or *fuisse* being understood; *as*, *Communicatum oportuit*; *mansum oportuit*; *Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*, The young man should have been humoured, *Ter.*

Obs. 4. *Fallit*, *fugit*, *præterit*, *latet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive; *as*, *In lege nullâ esse ejusmodi caput, non te fallit*; *De Dionysio fugit me ad te antea scribere*, *Cic.*

NOTE. *Attinet*, *pertinet*, & *spectat*, are construed with *ad*; *Ad rem publicam pertinet, me conservari*, *Cic.* And so personally, *Ille ad me attinet*, belongs, *Ter.* *Res ad arma spectat*, looks, points, *Cic.*

The CONSTRUCTION of the INFINITIVE.

XXX. One verb governs another in the infinitive; *as*,

Cupio discere,

I desire to learn.

Obs. 1. The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; *as*, *Horatius est dignus legi*, *Quintil.* And sometimes depends on a substantive; *as*, *Tempus equum fumantia solvere colla*, *Virg.*

Obs. 2. The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood; *as*, *Mene incepto desistere victam, scil. decet, or par est*, *Virg.* *Videre est.* *Dicere non est, scil. copia or facultas*, *Horat.* And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied; *as*, *Socratem fidibus docuit, scil. canere*, *Cic.* So *Discere*, *scire* *fidibus*.

Obs. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients *Nomen verbi*, The name or noun of the verb; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive, *as*, *Velle suum cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own; and likewise supplies the place of a noun, not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; *as*, 1. In the nominative, *Latrocinari, fraudare, turpe est*, *Cic.* *Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores*, *Ovid.* 2. In the genitive, *Peritus cantare, for cantandi, or cantus*, *Virg.* 3. In the dative, *Paratus servire, for servituti*, *Sall.* 4. In the accusative, *Da mihi fallere, for artem fallendi*, *Horat.* *Quod faciam superest, præter amare, nihil*, *Ovid.* 5. In the vocative, *O vivere nostrum, ut non sentientibus effluis!* For *vita nostra*. 6. In the ablative, *Dignus amari, for amore, or qui amatur*, *Virg.*

Obs. 4. Instead of the infinitive a different construction is often used after verbs of doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping; in short, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; *as*, *Dubitat ita*

facere, or more frequently, *an*, *num*, or *utrum ita futurum sit*; *Dubitavit an faceret necne*; *Non dubito quin fecerit*. *Vis me facere*, or *ut faciam*. *Metuit tangi*, or *ne tangatur*. *Spero te venturum esse*, or *fore ut venias*. *Nunquam putavi fore ut ad te supplex venirem*, Cic. *Exisimabant futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur*, Cæf.

Obf. 5. *To*, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, is omitted after *bid*, *dare*, *need*, *make*, *see*, *bear*, *feel*, and some others; as, *I bid him do it*: and in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, I am sent to complain, *Mittor querulum*, or *ut querar*, &c. Ready to hear, *Promptus ad audiendum*; Time to read, *Tempus legendi*; Fit to swim, *Aptus natando*; Easy to say, *Facile dictu*; I am to write, *Scripturus sum*; A house to let, or more properly, to be let, *Domus locanda*: He was left to guard the city, *Relictus est ut tueretur urbem*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, and SUPINES.

XXXI. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own verbs; as,

Amans virtutem, Loving virtue. *Carens fraude*, Wanting guile.

Obf. 1. Passive participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

Suspectus mihi, Suspected by me; *Suspectiores regibus*, Sall. *Invidus mihi*; hated by me, or hateful to me: *Indies invidior*, Suet. *Occulta, et maribus non invisâ solum, sed etiam inaudita sacra, unseon*, Cic.

EXOSUS, *PEROSUS*, and often also *PERTÆSUS*, govern the accusative; as, *Tædas exosa jugales*, Ovid. *Plebs consulum nomen haud secus quam regum perosa erat*, Liv. *Pertæsus ignaviam suam; semet ipse, displeased with*, Suet. *vitam, weary of*, Justin. *levitatis*, Cic.

Verbals in *BUNDUS* govern the case of their own verbs; as, *Gratulabundus patriæ*, Just. *Vitabundus castra hostium*, Liv. So sometimes also nouns; as, *Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus*, Cic. *Invidiæ consuli*, Sall. *Domum reditionis spe sublata*, Cæs. *Spectatio ludos*, Plaut.

Obf. 2. These verbs, *do*, *reddo*, *volo*, *curo*, *facio*, *babeo*, *comperis*, with the perfect participle, form a periphrasis similar to what we use in English; as, *Compertum habeo*, for *comperi*, *I have found*, Sall. *Effectum dabo*, for *efficiam*; *Inventum tibi curabo*, et *adductum tuum Pamphilum*, i. e. *inveniam et adducam*, Ter. Sometimes the gerund is used with *ad*; as, *Tradere ei gentes diripiendas*, or *ad diripiendum*, Cic. *Rogo, accipio, do aliquid utendum*, or *ad utendum*; *Misit mihi librum legendum*, or *ad legendum*, &c.

Obf. 3. These verbs, *curo, habeo, mando, loco, conduco, do, tribuo, mitto*, &c. are elegantly construed with the participle in *du* instead of the infinitive; as, *Funus faciendum curavi, for fieri, or ut fieret: Columnas ædificandas locavit, Cic.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

XXXII. Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns;

as,

Studendum est mihi, I must study. *Aptus studendo*, Fit for studying.
Tempus studendi, Time of study.

But more particularly ;

I. The Gerund in *DUM* with the verb *est* governs the dative ; as,

Legendum est mihi, I must read. *Moriendum est omnibus*, All must die.

So *Scio legendum esse mihi ; moriendum esse omnibus*, &c.

Obf. 1. This gerund always imports obligation or necessity ; and may be resolved into *oportet, necesse est*, or the like, and the infinitive or the subjunctive, with the conjunction *ut* ; as, *Omnibus est moriendum, or Omnibus necesse est mori, or ut moriantur ; or Necesse est ut omnes moriantur. Consulendum est tibi a me, I must consult for your good ; for Oportet ut consulam tibi, Cic.*

Obf. 2. The dative is often understood ; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano, sc. tibi, Juv.* *Hic, vincendum, aut moriendum, milites, est, sc. vobis, Liv.* *Deliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel, sc. tibi vel alicui, P. Syr.*

II. The gerund in *DI* is governed by substantives or adjectives ; as,

Tempus legendi, Time of reading. *Cupidus discendi*, Desirous of learning.

Obf. This gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural ; as, *Facultas agrorum condonandi, for agros, Cic.* *Copia spectandi comædiarum, for comædias, Ter.* But chiefly with pronouns ; as, *In castra venerunt sui purgandi causâ, Cæs.* *Vestri adhortandi causâ, Liv.* *Ejus videndi cupidus, sc. feminae, Ter.* The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

III. The gerund in *DO* of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness ; as,

Charta utilis scribendo, Paper useful for writing.

Obf. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood ; as, *Non est solvendi, scil. par, or habilis*, He is not able to pay. *Is finis censendo factus est, Liv.*

Obf. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs ; as, *Adesse scribendo, Cic.* *Aptat habendo ensim, for wearing ; Virg.*

IV. The gerund in *DUM* of the accusative case, is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter* ; as,

Promptus ad audiendum; Ready to hear.

Attentus inter docendum, Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions ; as, *Ante domandum*, *Virg.* *Ob absolvendum*, *Cic.* *Circa movendum*, *Quintil.* Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case ; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood.

V. The gerund in *DO* of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in* ; as,

Pana a peccando absterret, Punishment frightens from sinning.

Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause ; as,

Memoria excolendo augetur, The memory is improved by exercising it.
Defessus sum ambulando, I am wearied with walking.

Obs. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other ; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere* ; only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense ; as, *Cum Tifidius vocaretur ad imperandum*, i. e. ut ipsi imperaretur, to receive orders, *Sall.* *Nunc ades ad imperandum*, vel ad parendum potius, *Sic enim antiqui loquebantur*, *Cic.* i. e. ut tibi imperetur. *Urit videndo*, i. e. dum videtur, *Virg.*

Gerunds turned into participles in *dus*.

XXXVI. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case ; as,

By the Gerund.		By the participle or Gerundive.
Petendum est mihi pacem,	} or more frequently {	Pax est petenda mihi.
Tempus petendi pacem,		Tempus petendæ pacis.
Ad petendum pacem,		Ad petendam pacem.
A petendo pacem,		A petenda pace.

Obs. 1. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was ; as,

Genitive ; *Inita sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani extinguendi*, *Cic.*

Dat *Perpetiundo labori idoneus*, *Colum.* *Capectendæ reipublicæ habilis*, *Tac.* *Area firma templis ac partibus sustinendis*, *Liv.* *Quæri ferendo est*, *sc. aptus v. habilis*, *Ovid.* *Natus miseriis ferendis*,

Ter. Literis dandis vigilare, *Cic.* Locum oppido condendo capere, *Liv.*

Acc. and abl. Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnanda Capua duces Romanos abstrahere, *Liv.* Orationem Latinam legendis nostris efficies pleniorē, *Cic.*

Obs. 2. The gerunds of verbs which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *medeor*, *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, and *potior*; as, *Spes potiundi urbe*, or *potiunda urbis*: but we always say, *Cupidus subveniendi tibi*, and never *tui*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. The Supine in *um*.

XXXVII. The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

Abiit deambulatum, He hath gone to walk.

So, Ducere cohortes prædatum, *Liv.* Nunc venis irrisum dominum? Quod in rem tuam optimum factu arbitror, te id admonitum venio, *Plaut.*

Obs. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *It se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *operam dat*, *ut se perdat*, He is bent on his own destruction, *Ter.* This supine with *iri* taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive; as, *An credebas illam sine tuâ operâ iri deductum domum?* Which may be thus resolved, *An credebas iri* (a te, vel ab aliquo) *deductum* (i. e. ad deducendum) *illam domum*, *Ter.*

Obs. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum*; *Cantatum provocemus*, *Ter.* *Revocatus defensum patriam*; *Divisit copias hiematum*, *Nep.*

Obs. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *Venit oratum opem*: or, 1. *Venit opem orandi causâ* or *opis orandæ*. 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandam opem*. 3. *Venit opi orandæ*. 4. *Venit opem oraturus*. 5. *Venit qui*, or *ut opem oret*. 6. *Venit opem orare*. But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

2. The supine in *u*.

XXXVIII. The supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

Facile dictu, Easy to tell, or to be told.

So *Nihil dictu factum*, *visuque hæc limina tangat*; *intra quæ puer est*, *Juv.* *Difficilis res est inventu verus amicus*; *Fas v. nefas est dictu*; *Opus est scitu*, *Cic.*

Obf. 1. The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc obsonatu redeo*, from getting provisions, *Plant.* *Primus cubitu surgat (villicus,)* postremus cubitum eat, from bed, *Cato.*

Obf. 2. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *Difficile cognitu, cognosci, or ad cognoscendum*; *Res facilis ad credendum, Cic.*

Obf. 3. The supines being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood; the supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the supine in *u* by the preposition *in*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

1. The Construction of Adverbs.

XXXIX. Adverbs are joined to Verbs and Participles, to adjectives, and to other adverbs; as,

Bene scribit, He writes well.

Fortiter pugnans, Fighting bravely.

Servus egregie fidelis, A slave remarkably faithful.

Satis bene, Well enough.

Obf. 1. Adverbs are sometimes likewise joined to substantives; as,

Homerus plane orator; plane noster, Cic. So, *Hodie mane; cras mane, heri mane; hodie vesperi, &c. tam mane, tam vespere.*

Obf. 2. The adverb for the most part in Latin, and always in English, is placed near to the word which it modifies or affects.

Obf. 3. Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative; as,

Nec non senserunt, Nor did they not perceive, i. e. *Et senserunt,* And they did perceive; *Non poteram non exanimari metu, Cic.* Examples however of the contrary of this sometimes occur in good authors both English and Latin. Thus two or three negative participles are placed before the subjunctive mode to express a stronger negation. *Neque tu haud dicas tibi non prædictum, Ter.*

But what chiefly deserves attention in Adverbs, is the degree of comparison and the mode with which they are joined. 1. *Apprime, admodum, vehementer, maxime, perquam, valde, oppide, &c.* and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the positive; as, *Utrique nostrum gratum admodum feceris,* You will do what is very agreeable to both of us, *Cic. perquam puerile,* very childish; *oppide pauci,* very few; *perfacile est, &c.* In like manner, *Parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum; as, In rebus apertissimis nimium longi sumus; parum firmus, multum bonus, Cic.* Adverbs in *um* are sometimes

also joined to comparatives; as, *Forma viri aliquantum amplior humanâ, Liv.*

QUAM is joined to the positive or superlative in different senses; as, *Quam difficile est! How difficult it is!* *Quam crudelis, or Ut crudelis est! How cruel he is!* *Flens quam familiariter, very familiarly, Ter.* *So quam severè, very severely, Cic.* *quam latè, very widely, Cas.* *Tam multa, quam, &c. as many things as, &c.* *Quam maximas potest copias armat, as great as possible, Sall.* *Quam maximas gratias agit, quam primum, quam sapissime, Cic.* *Quam quisque pessimè fecit, tam maximè tutus est, Sall.*

FACILE, for *hand dubiè*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to superlatives or words of a similar meaning; as, *Facilè doctissimus, facilè princeps, &c. præcipuus.* **LONGE**, to comparatives or superlatives, rarely to the positives; as, *Longè eloquentissimus Plato, Cic.* *Pedibus longè melior Lycus, Virg.*

2. **CUM**, when, is construed with the indicative or subjunctive, oftener with the latter; **DUM**, whilst, or how long, with the indicative; as, *Dum hæc aguntur; Ægroto, dum anima est, spes esse dicitur, Cic.* *Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos, Ovid.* **DUM** and **DONEC**, for *usquedum*, until, sometimes with the indicative and sometimes with the subjunctive; as, *Operior, dum ista cognosco, Cic.* *Haud desinam, donec perfecero, Ter.* **SO QUOAD**, for *quamdum, quantum, quatenus*, as long, as much, as far as; thus, *Quoad Catilina fuit in urbe; Quoad tibi æquum videbitur; quoad possem & liceret; quoad progredi potuerit amentia, Cic.* But **QUOAD**, until, oftener with the subjunctive; as, *Thessalonicæ esse statueram, quoad aliquid ad me scriberes, Cic.* but not always; *Non faciam finem regandi, quoad nunciatum erit te fecisse, Cic.* The pronoun *ejus*, with *facere* or *fieri* is elegantly added to *quoad*; as, *Quoad ejus facere poteris; Quoad ejus fieri possit, Cic.* *Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *aliquid* or some such word understood. *Quoad corpus, quoad animam, for secundum, or quod attinet ad corpus vel animam*, as to the body or soul, is esteemed by the best grammarians not to be good Latin.

3. **POSTQUAM** or **POSTEAQUAM**, after, is usually joined with the Indic. **ANTEQUAM**, **PRIUSQUAM**, before; **SIMUL**, **SIMULAC**, **SIMULATQUE**, **SIMUL UT**, as soon as; **UBI**, when, sometimes with the Ind. and sometimes with the Subj. as, *Antequam dico or dicam, Cic.* *Simulac persensit, Virg.* *Simul ut videro Curionem, Cic.* *Hæc ubi dicta dedit, Liv.* *Ubi semel quis pejeraverit, ei credi postea non oportet, Cic.* **SO NÆ**, truly; as, *Næ ego homo sum infelix, Ter.* *Næ tu, si id fecisses, melius famæ consuluisses, Cic.* But **NE**, not, with the Imperative, or more elegantly with the subjunctive; as, *Ne jura, Plaut.* *Ne post conferas culpam in me, Ter.* *Ne tot annorum felicitatem in unius horæ dederis discrimen, Liv.*

4. **QUASI**, **CEU**, **TANQUAM**, **PERINDE**, when they denote resemblance, are joined with the Indic. *Fuit, olim, quasi ego sum, senex, Plaut.* *Adversus rupto ceu quondam turbine venti configunt, Virg.*

Hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur, *Cic.* But when used ironically, they have the subjunctive; as, Quasi de verbo, non de re laboratur, *Cic.*

5. *UTINAM*, or *SI*, *UT* for *utinam*, I wish, take the subjunctive; as, Utinam ea res ei voluptati sit, *Cic.* O mihi prateritos referat si Jupiter annos, *Virg.* Ut illum dii deæque perdaat, *Ter.*

6. *UT*, when or after, takes the indicative; as, Ut discessit, venit, &c. ¶ Also for *quam*, or *quemodo*, how! as, Ut valet! Ut falsus animi est! Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto latent! *Plaut.* ¶ Or when it simply denotes resemblance; as, Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse, *Plaut.* ¶ In this sense it sometimes has the subjunctive; as, Ut sementem feceris, ita metes, *Cic.*

7. *QUIN*, for *CUR NON*, takes the Indicative; as, Quin continetis vocem indicem stultitiæ vestræ, *Cic.* ¶ For *IMO*, nay or but, the Indicative or Imperative; as, Quin est paratum argentum, quin tu hoc audi, *Ter.* ¶ For *UT NON*, *QUI*, *QUÆ*, *QUOD NON*, or *QUO MINUS*, the Subjunctive; as, Nulla tam facilis res, quin difficilis fiet, quum invitatus facias, *Ter.* Nemo est, quin malit; Facere non possum, quin ad te mittam, *I cannot help sending*; Nihil abest, quin sum miserrimus, *Cic.*

The GOVERNMENT of ADVERBS.

XL. Some Adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

Pridie ejus diēi,
Ubique gentium,
Satis est verborum,

The day before that day.
Every where.
There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time governing the genit. are, *Interea*, *postea*, *inde*, *tunc*; as, *Interea loci*, in the mean time; *Postea loci*, afterwards; *inde loci*, then; *tunc temporis*, at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi* and *quo*, with their compounds, *ubique*, *ubicunque*, *ubivis*, *ubiubi*, &c. Also, *Eo*, *huc*, *hucce*, *unde*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *unde terrarum*, *vel gentium*; *longe gentium*; *ibidem loci*; *eo audaciæ*, *vecordix*, *miseriarum*, &c. *to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery*, &c. 3. Of quantity, *Abunde*, *assætum*, *largiter*, *nimis*, *satis*, *parum*, *minimè*; as, *Abundè gloriæ*, *assætum divitiarum*, *largiter auri*, *satis loquentiæ*, *sapientiæ parum est illi vel habet.* *He has enough of glory, riches*, &c. *Minimè gentium*, by no means.

Some add *ergo* and *instar*; as, *Ergo virtutis*, for the sake of virtue, *Cic.* *Instar montis*, like a mountain, *Virg.*: But these are properly nouns.

Obs. 1. These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive; as, *Potentia gloriæque abundè adeptus*, the same with *abundantiam gloriæ*; or *res*,

locus, or *negotium* and a preposition, may be understood ; as, *Interca loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci* ; *Ubi terrarum*, for *in quo loco terrarum*.

Obs. 2. We usually say *pridie*, *postridie ejus diis*, seldom *diem* ; but *pridie*, *postridie*, *Kalendas*, *Nonas*, *Idus*, *ludos Apollinarios*, *natalem ejus*, *absolutionem ejus*, &c. rarely *Kalendarum*, &c.

Obs. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative ; as,

En hostis, or *hostem* ; *Ecce miserum hominem*, *Cic.* Sometimes a dative is added ; as, *Ecce tibi Strato*, *Ter.* *Ecce duas* (*scil. aras*) *tibi*, *Daphni*, *Virg.* In like manner is construed *hem* put for *ecce* ; as, *Hem tibi Davum*, *Ter.* But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

XLI. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives ; as,

Omnium optime loquitur,
Convenienter natura,
Venit obviam ei,
Proxime castris or *castra*,

He speaks the best of all
Agreeably to nature.
He came to meet him.
Next the camp.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.

1. PREPOSITIONS governing the Accusative.

Ad astra, to the stars ; *relegari ad asserem*, to be bound to a plank ; *ad diem veniam*, *solvam*, &c. at or on ; *ad portam*, *ostium*, *foras*, at, before ; *ad urbem*, *Tiberim*, near, at ; *ad templa supplicatio*, in ; *ad summum*, at most ; *ad summam*, on the whole, *Cic.* ; *ad ultimum*, extremum, at last, finally ; *ad v. in speciem*, to appearance ; *mentis ad omnia capacitas* ; *annus fatalis ad interitum* ; *lenius ad severitatem*, for, with respect to, *Cic.* ; *ad vivum*, sc. corpus, to the quick ; *ad judicem agere*, before ; *nihil ad Cæsarem*, in comparison of ; *numero ad duodecim*, to the number of ; *omnes ad unum*, to a man ; *ad hoc*, besides ; *ad vulgi opinionem*, according to ; *homo ad unguem factus*, an accomplished man ; *herbæ ad lunam messæ*, by the light of, *Virg.* ; *ad tempus venit*, at ; *Ira brevis est & ad tempus*, for ; *ad tempus consilium capiam*, according to, *Cic.* ; *ad decem annos*, after ; *annos ad quinquaginta natus*, about, *Cic.* ; *nebula erat ad multum diei*, for a great part of the day, *Liv.* ; *ad pedes jacere*, *provolvi*, *procumbere*, & *ad genua* ; *ad manus esse*, at ; *ad manus venire*, to come to a close engagement ; *ad libellam debere*, to a farthing, no more and no less ; *ad hæc visa auditaque*, upon seeing and hearing these things, *Liv.*

Ad seems sometimes to be taken adverbially ; as, *Ad duo millia cæsa sunt* ; *ad mille hominum amissum est* ; *ad ducenti perierunt*, about, *Liv.*

Arud forum, at ; *apud me cænabis*, at my house ; *apud senatum*, *judices v. aliquem dicere*, before ; *apud majores nostros*, among ; *apud*

Xenophontem, *in the book of*; Est mihi fides, *vel* valeo, apud illum, *I have credit with him*; facio te apud illum deum, *Ter.*

ANTE diem, focum, &c. *before.*

ADVERSUS, *v. -um*; CONTRA hostes, *against*; adversus infimos justitia est servanda, *towards*; adversum hunc loqui, *to*, *Ter.* Lerina adversum Antipolim, *over against*, *Plin.*

CIS *vel* CITRA flumen, *on this side*; citra necessitatem, *without*; Ede citra eruditatem, bibe citra ebrietatem, *Sen.*

CIRCUM & CIRCA regem, *about*; Varia circa hæc opinio, *Plin.* ERGA amicos, *towards*. EXTRA muros; Extra jocum, periculum, noxiam, sortem, *without*; nemo extra te, *besides*; extra conjurationem, *not concerned in*, *Sall.*

INFRA tectum, *below the roof.*

INTER fratres, *among*; Inter & super cœnam, *during, in the time of*; inter hæc parata, *during these preparations*, *Sall.* Inter tot annos, *in*, *Cic.* Inter diem; *whence*, interdiu, *in the day time*; inter se amant, *they love one another*; Quasi non norimus nos inter nos, *Ter.*

INTRA privatos parietes, intra paucos, annos, *within*; intra famam est, *less than report*, *Quinct.*

JUXTA macellum, *near the shambles.*

OB lucrum, *for gain*; ob oculos, *before*; ob industriam *for* de industria, *on purpose*, *Plaut.*

PENES quem, *or* quem penes, *in the power of*; Penes te es? *Are you in your senses?* *Hor.*

PER agros, *through*; per vim, per scelus, *by*; per anni tempus, per ætatem licet, *for, by reason of.*

PONE caput, *behind.*

POST hoc tempus, *after*; post tergum, *behind*; post homines natos, post hominum memoriam, *since the world began.*

PRÆTER te nemo, *no body, besides or except*; præter casam fugere, *beyond*; præter legem, morem, æquum & bonum, spem, opinionem, &c. *contrary to, against, beyond*; præter cæteros excellere, lamentari, *above*; præter ripam ire, *along, near*; præter oculos, *before*, *Cic.*

PROPTER virtutem, *for, on account of*; propter aquæ rivum, *near, hard by*, *Virg.*

SECUNDUM facta & virtutes tuas, *according to*, *Ter.* secundum litus, secundum aurem vulneratus est, *near to*; in actione secundum vocem vultus plurimum valet; secundum patrem tu es proximus, *after, next to*; Prætor secundum me decrevit, sententiam, dedit, *for, in my favour*, *Cic.*

SECUS viam, *by, along.*

SUPRA terram, *above.*

TRANS mare, *over, beyond.*

ULTRA oceanum, *beyond.*

To prepositions governing the accusative are commonly added CIRCITER, PROPE, USQUE & VERSUS; as, Circiter meridiem, *about mid-day*; prope muros, *near the walls*; usque Puteolos, Tharsam usque, *as far as*; Orientem versus, *towards the east.* But in these *ad* is

understood; which we find sometimes expressed; as, *Prope ad annum, Nep. Ab ovo usque ad mala, Hor. Ad oceanum versus, Cæf. In Italiam versus, Cic.*

2. PREPOSITIONS governing the Ablative.

A patre, ab omnibus, abs te, *by or from*; a puero, *vel* pueris, a pueritia, incunabulis, teneris unguibus, &c. *from a child, ever since childhood*; ab ovo usque ad mala, *from the beginning to the end of supper*; a manu, sc. servus, *an amanuensis or clerk*; ad manum, *a waiting man*; a pedibus, *a footman*; a latere principis, *an attendant*. So a secretis, rationibus, consiliis, cyathis, &c. *a secretary, accountant, &c.* fores a nobis, *for nostræ*. Injuria ab illo, *for illius*, Ter. a cæna, *after*; Secundus, tertius a Romulo; ictus ab latere, *on or in*; a scnatu stare, *for, in defence of*; ab oculis doleo, Plaut. ab ingenio improbus, a pecunia & militibus imparatus, *as to, with respect to*, Cic. Est calor a sole; omissores ab re, *too careless about money*; a villa mercenarium vidi, Ter.

ABSQUE causa, *without*; absque te esset, recte ego mihi vidissem, i. e. si tu non esses, nisi tu esses, *but for you, had it not been for you*, Ter. Absque is chiefly used by comic writers; sine, *by orators*.

CLAM patre & patrem, *without the knowledge of*.

CORAM omnibus, *before, in the presence of*.

CUM exercitu, *with*; testis mecum est annulus, *in my possession*, Ter. cum prima luce, *at break of day*; cum imperio esse, *in*; cum primis, *in primis, in the first place*; cum metu dicere, cum lætitia vivere, cum cura, &c. Cic. *We say, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum; rarely cum me, cum te, &c. and quocum or cum quo, quibuscum & cum quibus.*

De lana caprina rixantur, *about, concerning*; De tanto patrimonio nihil relictum est, *of*; de loco superiore, *from*; de die, *by day*; de nocte, *by night*; de integro, *anew, afresh*; de v. ex improvviso, *unexpectedly*; de v. ex industria, *on purpose*; de meo, *at my expense*; Id de lucro putato esse, *clear gain*, Ter.; de v. ex compacto agere, *by agreement*; de transverso, *cross-wise, athwart*; de v. ex ejus sententia, consilio, *according to*; qua v. hac de causa, *for*; homo de plebe; templum de marmore, *of*; de scripto dicere, *to read a speech*; de Pilio emit, *from*, Cic. De servis fidelissimus; De ipsius exercitu non amplius hominum mille cecidit, Nep. Robur de exercitu, Liv. Adolescens de summo loco, Plaut. De procul aspicere, Id.

E foro, Ex ædibus, *from, out of*; e contrario, v. contraria parte, *on the contrary*; e regione, *over against*; e republica, e re alicujus, *for the good of*; statim e somno, ex fuga, ex tanta prosperantia, aliud ex alio malum, *from, after*; e vestigio, *out of hand, immediately*; poculum ex auro; ex equo pugnare, *on horse back*; facere pugnam ex commodo, *on advantageous ground*, Sall.; diem ex die expectare, *from day to day, day after day*; ex ordine, *in order*; magna ex parte, *for the most part*; ex supervacuo, *superfluously*; ex tua dignitate v. virtute, ex

decreto senatûs, enatura, *according to*; *so* vulgus ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa æstimat; ex *v.* de more, ad *v.* in morem alicujus. Ex animo, *from the heart*; Insolentia ex prosperis rebus, *e via* languere, ex doctrina nobilis, *on account of*; ex usu est tibi, *of advantage*; ex eo die, *since*; ex amicis certis certissimus, *of or among*; ex pedibus laborare, *to be ill of the gout*, Cic. E se nata, *as the matter stands*, Ter. Commenta mater est, esse ex alio viro, Nescio quo, puerum natum, *by*, Id.

Pro gloria certare, *for*; Rati noctem pro se, *favourable to them*, Sall. Hoc est pro me, Cic. pro templo, tribunali, concione, rostris, castris, foribus, *before*; pro sua dignitate, sapientia, &c. pro potestate cogere, pro tempore, re, loco, suo jure, *according to*; est pro prætore, pro te molam, comes facundus pro vehiculo est, *for, instead of*; pro viribus, pro parte virili, pro sua quisque parte *v.* facultate, *to one's ability or power*; Parum tibi pro eo, quod a te hæbeo, reddidi, Cic. *in comparison of, considering*; pro ut, pro eo ac, pro eo ut mereor, *as I deserve*; pro se quisque, uterque, &c. *for his own part*; pro rata parte, pro portione, *in proportion*; pro cive se gerit; agere pro victoribus; pro suo uti; pro rupto fœdus habet, *for, as*; *so* pro certo, infecto, comperto, nihiloq. concessio, &c. habeo, duco. Pro occiso relictus est, Cic.

Præ se pugionem tulit, *before*; speciem præ se boni viri fert, *presents to be*, Ter. præ lacrymis non possum scribere, *for, because of*; illum præ me contempni, *in comparison of*; *So the adv.* præut; *as*, præut hujus rabies quæ dabit, Ter.

Palam populo, omnibus, *before, with the knowledge of*.

Sine labore, *without*; sine ulla causa, pompa, molestia, querela, impensa, &c.; homo sine re, fide, spe, fortunis, sede, &c. Cic.

Capulo TENUIS, *up to the bill*. Tenuis is construed with the genitive plural, when the word wants the sing. as, *Cumarum tenuis*, as far as *Cuma*: or when we speak of things, of which we have by nature only two; as, *Oculorum, aurium, narium, labrorum, lumborum, crurum tenuis, up to*. *We also find* *Coreyræ tenuis, & ostiis tenuis*, Liv. *Colchis tenuis*, Flor. *Pectoribus tenuis*, Ovid.

To prepositions governing the abl. is commonly added *procul*; as, *Procul domo*, far from home; but here *a* is understood which is also often expressed; as, *Procul a patria*, *Virg.* *Procul ab ostentatione*, *Quint.* *Culpa est procul a me*, Ter.

3. PREPOSITIONS governing the Accus. and Abl.

XLIV. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

IN, when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative ; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative ; as,

IN urbem ire, into ; *amor in patriam, in te benignus, towards* ; *in lucem, until day* ; *in eam sententiam, to that purpose, on that head* ; *in rem tuam est, for your advantage* ; *in utramque partem disputare, on both sides, for and against* ; *litura in nomen, on*, *Cic. potestas in filium, over* ; *in aliquem dicere, against* ; *mirum in modum, after* ; *in pedes stare, in aurem dormire, on* ; *in os laudare, to, before* ; *in v. inter patres lectus, into the number of* ; *in vulgus probari, spargere, &c. among* ; *crefcit in dies, in singulos dies, omnes in dies, every day* ; *in diem posterum, proximum, decimum, against* ; *in diem vivere, to live from hand to mouth, not think of to-morrow* ; *Est in diem, will happen sometime after, Ter. Induciae in duos menses datae, in hunc diem, annum, &c. for* ; *Ternis assibus in pedem, v. in singulos pedes, transegit, He bargained for three shillings a foot, or for every foot* ; *So in jugerum, militem, capita, naves, &c. in mediana singula, H. S. quinos denos dedisti, Cic.*

IN portu navigo, in tempore, in ; *esse in potestate, v. in potestatem, honore, v. honorem, mente v. mentem* ; *in manu v. manibus esse* ; *habere, tenere, in one's power, on hand* ; *in amicis, among* ; *in oculis, before* : *Occisus est in provinciam, for in provincia, Sall. In pueritia, adolescentia, senectute, absentia, for puer or pueri, when a boy or boys, &c. Hoc in tempore, Nep. In loco fratris diligere, for ut fratrem, Ter.*

SUB terras ibit imago, sub aspectum cadit, under ; *sub ipsum funus, near, just before, Hor. sub lucem, ortum lucis, noctem, vesperam, brumam, i. e. incipiente luce, &c. at the dawn of day, &c. sub eodem tempus, about* ; *sub eas literas recitatae sunt tuae, sub festos dies, after, Cic.*

SUB muro, rege, pedibus, &c. under ; *sub urbe, near, Ter. sub ea conditione, v. -em, on or with.*

SUPER Numidiam, above, beyond ; *super ripas, upon* ; *super hæc* ; *super morbum etiam fames affixit, besides, Liv. super arbore, fronde super viridi, upon* ; *super hac re scribere, his accensa super, concerning* ; *alii super alios trucidantur, Liv. Super cœnam, super vinum et epulas, for inter, during, Curt. Nec super ipse suâ molitur laude laborem, for, Virg.*

SUBTER terram v. terra, under.

Obs. 1. When prepositions do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are, *Ante, circa, clam, coram, contra, infra, intra, juxta, palam, pone, post, propter, secus, subter, super, supra, ultra*. But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense ; as, *Longo post tempore venit, sc. post id tempus. Adversus, juxta, propter, secus, secundum, & clam, are by some thought to be always ad-*

verbs, having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the acc. or abl. as, *Intus cellam*, for *intra*, Liv. *Intus templo divum*, sc. *in*, Virg. *Simul his*, sc. *cum*, Hor.

Obs. 2. A and æ are only put before consonants; AB and EX, usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

A patre, e regione: ab initio, ab rege; ex urbe, ex parte: *abs* before *g* and *t*; as, *abs te*, *abs quivis homine*, Ter. Some phrases are used only with *e*; as, *e longinquo*, *e regione*, *e vestigio*, *e re mea est*, &c. Some only with *ex*; as, *Ex compacto*, *ex tempore*, *magna ex parte*, &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions are often understood; as, *Devenere locos*, scil. *ad*; *It portis*, sc. *ex*, Virg. *Nunc id prodeco*, scil. *ob v. propter*, Ter. *Maria aspera juro*, scil. *per*, Virg. *Ut se loco movere non possent*, scil. *e vel de*, Cæf. *Vina promens dolio*, scil. *ex*, Hor. *Quid illo facias? Quid me fiet*, sc. *de*, Ter. And so in English, *Show me the book*; *Get me some paper*, that is, *to me, for me*. We sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, *Circum Concordiæ*, sc. *ædem*, Sall. *Round St. Paul's*, namely, *church*; *Campum Stellatæm divisit extra sortem ad viginti millibus civium*, i. e. *civium millibus ad viginti millia*, Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, *Emittere servum*, scil. *manu*, Plaut. *Evomere virus*, scil. *ore*, Cic. *Educere copias*, scil. *castris*, Cæf.

XLV. A preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

Adeamus scholam,

Let us go to the school.

Excamus scholâ,

Let us go out of the school.

Obs. 1. The preposition with which the verb is compounded, is often repeated; as, *Adire ad scholam*; *Exire e schola*; *Adgredi aliquid*, or *ad aliquid*; *ingredi orationem vel in orationem*; *inducere animum, et in animum*; *evadere undis et ex undis*; *decedere de suo jure*; *decedere viâ vel de via*; *expellere, ejicere, exterminare, extrudere, exturbare urbe, et ex urbe*. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, *Affari, alloqui, allatrare aliquem, not ad aliquem*. So, *alluere urbem*; *accolere flumen*; *circumvenire aliquem*; *præterire injuriam*; *abdicare se magistratu*, (*also abdicare magistratum*); *transducere exercitum fluvium*, &c. Others are only construed with the preposition; as, *Accurrere ad aliquem*, *adhortari ad aliquem*, *incidere in morbum*, *avocare a studiis*, *avertere ab incepto*, &c.

Some admit other prepositions; as, *Abire, demigrare, loco*; *et, a, de, ex, loco*; *abstrahere aliquem a, de, vel e conspectu*; *De-*

P

Assere sententia, a vel de sententia; Excidere manibus, de vel e manibus, &c.

Obs. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accusative; as,

Egredi urbe or urbem, scil. extra; egredi extra vallum, Nep. Evadere insidiis or insidias. Patrios excedere muros, Lucan. Scederatâ excedere terrâ, Virg. Elabi ex manibus; pugnam, vincula, Tac.

Obs. 3. This rule does not take place, unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself; as, *Alloquor patrem, or loquor ad patrem.*

3. The CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

XLVI. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

O vir bonus or bone! O good man! Heu me miserum! Ah wretched me!

So, O vir fortis atque amicus! Ter. Heu vanitas humana! Plin. Heu miserande puer! Virg. O præclarum custodem ovium (ut aiunt) lupum! Cic.

XLVII. *Hei* and *vae* govern the dative; as,

Hæi mihi! Ah me! Vae vobis! Wo to you!

Obs. 1. *Heus* and *obe* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heus Syra, Ter. Obe libelle! Martial. Proh or pro, ab, vob, hem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Proh hominum fidem! Ter. Proh Sancte Jupiter! Cic. Hem astutias! Ter.*

Obs. 2. Interjections cannot properly have either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connection with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case therefore is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely: thus, *Heu me miserum! stands for Heu! quam me miserum sentio! Hei mihi! for Hei! malum est mihi! Proh dolor! for Proh! quantus est dolor!* and so in other examples.

The CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price of a thing*. 2. The *Cause, Manner, and Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure and Distance*. 5. *Time*.

I. PRICE.

XLVIII. The price of a thing is put in the ablative ;

as,

*Emi librum duobus assibus,
Constitit talento,*

I bought a book for two shillings.
It cost a talent.

So *Asse carum est; vile viginti minis; auro venale, &c.* Nocet empta dolore voluptas, *Hor.* Spem pretio non emam, *Ter.* Plurimi auro veneunt honores, *Ovid.*

¶ These genitives *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*, are excepted ; as,

Quanti constitit? How much cost it? *Asse et pluris*, A shilling and more.

Obf. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative ; as, *parvo pretio, impenso pretio vendere, Cic.*

Obf. 2. *Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo*, are often used without the substantive ; as, *Permagno constitit, sc. pretio, Cic.* We also say, *Emi carè, carius, carissimè; bene, melius, optimè; malè, pejùs, viliùs, vilissimè; Valde carè æstimas: Emit domum prope dimidio carius, quam æstimabat, Cic.*

Obf. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed ; as *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret, Liv.*

2. MANNER and CAUSE.

XLIX. The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative ; as,

*Palleo metu,
Fecit suo more,
Scribo calamo,*

I am pale for fear.
He did it after his own way.
I write with a pen.

So *Ardet dolore; pallefcere culpâ; æstquare dubitatione; gestire voluptate v. secundis rebus; Confectus morbo; affectus beneficiis, gravissimo supplicio; insignis pietate; deterior licentiâ: Pietate filius, consiliis pater, amore frater; hence Rex Dei gratiâ. Paritur pax bello, Nep. Procedere lento gradu; Acceptus regio apparatus: Nullo sono convertitur annus, Juv. Jam veniet tacito curva senectæ pede, Ovid. Percutere securi, defendere saxi, conficere sagittis, &c.*

Obf. 1. The ablative is here governed by some preposition understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed ; as, *De more matrum locuta est, Virg. Magno cum metu; Hac de causa: Præ mærore, formidine, &c.* But hardly ever before the instrument ; as, *Vulnerare aliquem gladio, not cum gladio; unless among the poets, who sometimes add a or ab; as, Trajectus ab ense, Ovid.*

Obs. 2. When any thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of CONCOMITANCY, and has the preposition, *cum* usually added; as, Obsedit curiam cum gladiis: Ingressus est cum gladio, *Cic.*

Obs. 3. Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances, as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the ADJUNCT, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of; as, Capitulum saxo quadrato constructum, *Liv.* Floruit acumine ingenii, *Cic.* Pollet opibus, valet armis, viget memoria, fama nobilis, &c. Æger pedibus. When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added; as, Templum de marmore, *seldom* marmoris; Potulum ex auro factum, *Cic.*

3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to which*. 3. The place *whence*, or *from which*. 4. The place *by* or *through which*.

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive; unless it be a noun of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accusative; FROM or BY a place, in the ablative.

But these cases will be more exactly ascertained by reducing the circumstances of place to particular questions.

1. The place WHERE.

L. When the question is made by *Ubi*? Where? the name of a town is put in the genitive; as,

Vixit Roma,

He lived at Rome.

Mortuus est Londini,

He died at London.

¶ But if the name of a town be of the third declension, or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

Habitat Carthagine,

He dwells at Carthage.

Studuit Parisiis,

He studied at Paris.

Obs. 1. When a thing is said to be done, not in the place itself, but in its neighbourhood, we always use the preposition *ad* or *apud*; as, *Ad* or *apud* Trojam, At or near Troy.

Obf. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the preposition *in* understood; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe*, or *in oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed: thus, we do not say, *Natus est Romæ urbis celebri*; but either *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe*, or *in Roma celebri urbe*, or sometimes *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner we usually say, *Habitat in urbe Carthagine*, with the preposition. We likewise find *Habitat Carthagini*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative, when the question is made by *ubi*?

2. The place WHITHER.

LI. When the question is made by *Quo*? Whither? the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

<i>Venit Romam,</i>	He came to Rome.
<i>Profectus est Athenas,</i>	He went to Athens.

Obf. 1. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom; as, *Carthagini nuncios mittam*, *Horat.*

Obf. 2. Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied; as, *Romam erat nunciatum*, The report was carried to Rome, *Liv.* *Messianam literas dedit*, *Cic.*

3. The Place WHENCE.

LII. When the question is made by *Unde*? Whence? or *Qua*? By or through what place? the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

<i>Discessit Corintho,</i>	He departed from Corinth.
<i>Laodicæa iter faciebat,</i>	He went through Laodicea.

When motion *by* or *through* a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used; as, *Per Thebas iter fecit*, *Nep.*

Domus and *Rus*.

LIII. *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as,

<i>Manet domi,</i>	He stays at home.
<i>Domum revertitur,</i>	He returns home.
<i>Domo arcessitus sum,</i>	I am called from home.
<i>Vivit rure,</i> or more frequently <i>ruri,</i>	He lives in the country.
<i>Rediit rure,</i>	He is returned from the country.
<i>Abiit rus,</i>	He is gone to the country.

Obf. 1. *Humi, militia, and belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns; thus,

Domi et militia, or belli, At home and abroad. *Jacet humi*, He lies on the ground.

Obf. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition; as, In domo paterna, *not* domi paternæ; So Ad domum paternam: Ex domo paternâ. Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, regius, vester, and alienus*; as, *Domi meæ vixit, Cic. Regiam domum comportant, Sall.*

Obf. 3. When *Domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used, and sometimes not; as, *Deprehensus est domi, domo, or in domo Cæsaris.*

LIV. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added; as,

When the question is made by

Ubi? Natus in Italia, in Latio, in urbe, &c.

Quo? Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in, or, ad urbem, &c.

Unde? Rediit ex Italia, e Latio, ex urbe, &c.

Qua? Transiit per Italiam, per Latium, per urbem, &c.

Obf. 1. A preposition is often added to names of towns; as, In Roma for Romæ; ad Romam, ex Roma, &c.

Peto always governs the accusative as an active verb, without a preposition; as, *Petivit Egyptum*, He went to Egypt.

Obf. 2. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition; as, Pompeius Cypri visus est, *Cæs. Cretæ jussit confidere Apollo, Virg. Venit Sardiniam, Cic. Romæ, Numidiaque facinora ejus memorat, Sall.*

4. MEASURE and DISTANCE.

L.V. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

Murus est decem pedes altus,

Urbs distat triginta millia, or tri-

ginta millibus passuum,

Iter, or itinere unius dici,

The wall is ten feet high.

The city is thirty miles distant.

One day's journey.

Obf. 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension; as, *Longus, latus, crassus, profundus, and altus*: *Patet, porrigitur, eminet, &c.* The names of measure are *pes, cubitus, ulna, passus, digitus*, an inch; *palmus*, a span, an hand-breadth, &c. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance; as, *Eo, curro, absum*

disso, &c. The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Obf. 2. When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denum pedum*, for *denorum*, in the genitive, *ad mensuram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

Obf. 3. When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative; or the accusative with the preposition *ad*; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe confedit*, or, *ad sex millia passuum*, *Cæs.* *Ad quantum milliarium v. milliare confedit*, *Cic.* *Ad quantum lapidem*, *Nep.*

Obf. 4. The excess or difference of measure and distance is put in the ablative; as,

Hoc lignum excedit illud digito. Toto vertice supra est, *Virg.* *Britanniæ longitudo ejus latitudinem ducentis quadraginta milliaribus superat.*

5. TIME.

LVI. When the question is made by *Quando*? When? time is put in the ablative; as,

Venit hora tertiâ,

He came at three o'clock.

¶ When the question is made by *Quamdiu*? How long? time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative; as,

Mansit paucos dies,

He staid a few days.

Sex mensibus absuit,

He was away six months.

* Or thus, Time *when* is put in the ablative, time *how long* is put in the accusative.

Obf. 1. When we speak of any precise time, it is put in the ablative; but when continuance of time is expressed, it is put for the most part in the accusative.

Obf. 2. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition; as, *In præsentia*, or *in præsentia, scil. tempore*; in *vel ad præsens*; *Per decem annos*; *Surgunt de nocte*; *Ad horam destinata*; *Intra annum*; *Per idem tempus*; *ad Kalendas soluturos ait*, *Suet.* The preposition *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc, illud, id, istuc, ætatis, temporis, horæ, &c.* for *hac ætate, hoc tempore, &c.* And *ante* or some other word; as, *Annos natus unum & viginti, sc. ante*. *Siculi quotannis tributa conferunt, sc. tot annis, quot vel quotquot sunt*, *Cic.* *Prope diem, sc. ad, soon*; *Oppidum paucis diebus, quibus eo ventum est, expugnatum, sc. post eos dies*, *Cæs.* *Ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias accepi tuas literas, for die tertio ante*, *Cic.* *Qui dies futurus esset inante diem octavum Kalendas Novembris, Id.* *Exante diem quintum Kal. Octob.* &c.

Lacedæmonii septingentos jam annos amplius unis moribus et nunquam mutatis legibus vivunt, *sc.* quam per, *Cic.* We find, Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque, *sc.* Atticus; *for* septemdecim annos natus, *seventeen years old, Nep.*

Obf. 3. The adverb *ABHINC* which is commonly used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a preposition, as, *factum est abhinc biennio* or *biennium*, It was done two-years ago. So likewise are *post* and *ante*; as, *paucos post annos*: but here, *ea* or *id* may be understood.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or *phrases*, and is commonly called a *Period*.

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses*.

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects, and one attribute, or several attributes, and one subject, or both several subjects and several attributes: That is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgment or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must therefore be in every sentence or period as many propositions as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as,

Happy is the man who loveth religion and practiseth virtue.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

LVII. The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Vir qui,</i>	The man who.	<i>Viri qui.</i>
<i>Femina quæ,</i>	The woman who.	<i>Femina quæ.</i>
<i>Negotium quod,</i>	The thing which.	<i>Negotia quæ.</i>
<i>Ego qui scribo,</i>	I who write.	<i>Nos qui scribimus.</i>
<i>Tu qui scribis,</i>	Thou who writest.	<i>Vos qui scribitis.</i>
<i>Vir qui scribit,</i>	The man who writes.	<i>Viri qui scribunt.</i>

<i>Mulier quæ scribit,</i>	The woman who writes.	<i>Mulieres quæ scribunt.</i>
<i>Animal quod currit,</i>	The animal which runs.	<i>Animalia quæ currunt.</i>
<i>Vir quem vidi,</i>	The man whom I saw.	<i>Viri quos vidi.</i>
<i>Mulier quam vidi,</i>	The woman whom I saw.	<i>Mulieres quas vidi.</i>
<i>Animal quod vidi,</i>	The animal which I saw.	<i>Animalia quæ vidi.</i>
<i>Vir cui parat,</i>	The man whom he obeys.	<i>Viri quibus parat.</i>
<i>Vir cui est similis,</i>	The man to whom he is like.	<i>Viri quibus est similis.</i>
<i>Vir a quo,</i>	The man by whom.	<i>Viri a quibus.</i>
<i>Mulier ad quam,</i>	The woman to whom.	<i>Mulieres ad quas.</i>
<i>Vir cujus opus est,</i>	The man whose work it is.	<i>Viri quorum opus est.</i>
<i>Vir quem misero,</i>	} The man whom I pity.	
<i>cujus misereor vel miseresco,</i>		
<i>cujus me miseret,</i>		
<i>cujus vel cujus interest, &c.</i>		whose interest it is, &c.

If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, use to govern.

Thus the construction of the relative requires an acquaintance with most of the foregoing rules of syntax, and may serve as an exercise on all of them.

Obf. 1. The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective placed betwixt two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former; as,

Vir qui (vir) legit; vir, quem (virum) amo: Sometimes the latter; as, *Quam quisque nrbrit artem, in hac (arte) se exerceat,* Cic. *Eunuchum, quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedit,* Ter. sc. *Eunuchus.* Sometimes both cases are expressed; as, *Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire possent,* Cæf. Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted; as, *Sunt, quos hoc genus minime juvat, for sunt homines, quos,* &c. Hor.

Obf. 2. When the relative is placed betwixt two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former; as,

Vultus quem dixere chaos, Ovid. *Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur,* Sall. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem,* Cic. *Cogito id quod res est,* Ter. If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender; as, *Pompeius se afflixit, quod mihi est summo dolori,* scil. *Pompeium se affligere,* Cic. Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word supplied; as, *Scelus qui, for scelestus,* Ter. *Abundantia earum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant,* scil. *negotia,* Sall. *Vel virtus tua me vel vicinitas, quod ego in aliqua parte amicitie puto, facit ut te moneam,* scil. *negotium,* Ter.

Obf. 3. When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the

third ; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio, scarcely facit.* In English it sometimes agrees with either ; as, *I am the man, who make, or maketh.* But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence : thus it is proper to say “ I am the man, who takes care of your interest,” but if I add, “ at the expence of my own,” it would be improper. It ought either to be “ his own,” or “ who take.” In like manner, we say, “ I thank you, who gave, who did love,” &c. But it is improper to say, “ I thank thee, who gave, who did love :” it should be, “ who gavest, who didst love.” In no part of English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou* or *you*, *thy* or *your*, promiscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tuus*.

Obs. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective ; as,

Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui haberem gnatum tali ingenio predictum, Ter. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words ; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse servantur* ; i. e. *pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem,* &c. Liv. *Si tempus est ullum jure hominis necandi, quæ multa sunt, scil. tempora,* Cic.

Obs. 5. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted ; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit : Tyrrii tenere coloni, scil. quam or eam,* Virg. Or if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case ; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuerant, Romanos invadunt ;* for *quique in priore pugna non adfuerant,* Sall. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed ; as, The letter I wrote, for the letter which I wrote ; The man I love, *to wit,* whom. But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 6. The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent ; as, *Cum aliquid agas eorum, quorum consuesti,* for *quæ consuesti agere, or quorum aliquid agere consuesti,* Cic. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. The adjective pronouns *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is,* and *idem*, in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui* ; as, *Liber ejus,* His or her book ; *Vita eorum,* Their life, when applied to men ; *Vita earum,* Their life, when applied to women. By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis, quantus, quotus,* &c. are also sometimes construed like relatives ; as, *Facies est, qualem decet esse sororum,* Ovid. But these have commonly other adjectives, either expressed or understood, which answer to them ; as, *Tanta est multitudo, quantam urbs capere potest :* and are often applied to different substantives ; as, *Quales sunt cives, talis est civitas,* Cic.

Obf. 9. The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quod cum ita effet*, When that was so; not, Which when it was so, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, *Quem dicunt me esse*? Who do they say that I am? not whom. *Quem dicunt adventare*? Who do they say is coming?

Obf. 10. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, *Audire cupio, quæ legeris*, I want to hear, what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read: *Audire cupio, quæ legisti*, I want to hear, what you have read.

To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

Qui vocare? Geta, *sc. vocor.* *Quid quæris?* Librum, *sc. quæro.* *Quotâ horâ vanisti?* Sextâ. Sometimes the construction is varied; as, *Cujus est liber?* Meus, not mei: *Quanti emptus est?* Decem assibus. *Damnatusne es furti?* Imo alio crimine. Often the answer is made by other parts of speech than nouns; as, *Quid agitur?* Statur, *sc. a me, a nobis.* *Quis fecit?* Nescio: *Aliunt Petrum fecisse.* *Quomodo vales?* Bene, male. *Scriptistine?* Scripsi, ita, etiam, immo, &c. *An vidisti?* Non vidi, non, minime, &c. *Chærea tuam vestem detraxit tibi?* Factum. *Et eâ est indutus?* Factum, *Ter.* Most of the rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers.

The CONSTRUCTION of CONJUNCTIONS.

LVIII. The conjunctions *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel*, and some others, couple like cases and modes; as,

Honora patrem et matrem, Honour father and mother.

Nec legit nec scribit, He neither reads nor writes.

Obf. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions; as likewise, *quam, nisi, præterquam, an*; and also adverbs of likeness, as, *ceu, tanquam, quasi, ut, &c.* as,

Nullum præmium a vobis postulo, præterquam hujus diei memoriam, Cic. *Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur, Id.*

Obf. 2. These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence if the construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and modes may be coupled together; as,

Interest mea et reipublicæ ; Constitit affe et pluris ; Sive es Romæ, sive in Epiro ; Decius cum devoveret, et in mediam aciem irruerat, Cic. Vir magni ingenii summæque industria ; Neque per vim, neque insidiis, Sall. Tecum habita, & nôris, quam sit tibi curta supellex, Persf.

Obs. 3. When *et, aut, vel, sive, or nec*, are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by *both* or *likewise* ; *aut* or *vel*, by *either* ; the first *sive*, by *whether* ; and the first *nec*, by *neither* ; as,

Et legit, et scribit ; so tum legit, tum scribit ; or cum legit, tum scribit, He both reads and writes ; Sive legit, sive scribit, Whether he reads or writes : Jacere quâ vera, quâ falsa ; Increpare quâ consules ipsos, quâ exercitum, to upbraid both the consuls and the army, Liv.

LIX. Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (as *et, ac, atque, &c.*) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural ; as,

Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti, Peter and John who are learned.

Obs. 1. If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third ; as, *Sit tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*, If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well. Cic. In English the person speaking usually puts himself last : thus, You and I read ; Cicero and I are well : but in Latin the person who speaks is generally put first : thus, *Ego et tu legimus*.

Obs. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter ; as, *Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui* : but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The person is sometimes implied ; as, *Athenarum et Cratippi, ad quos, &c. Propter summam doctoris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter, &c. Cic.* Where *Athensæ & urbs* are put for *the learned men* of Athens. So in substantives ; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legati missi, i. e. the king and queen, Liv.*

Obs. 3. If the substantives signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender ; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt, Sall.*

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life ; because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantives to some certain class, under which they may all be comprehended ; that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now the *Genus* or class which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substances or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this the Latin grammarians use the word *Negotia*.

Obf. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest; as,

Et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit, *Cic.* Sociis et rege recepto, *Virg.* Et ego in culpa sum, et tu, *Both I am in the fault, and you; or* Et ego et tu es in culpa, *Both I and you are in the fault.* Nihil hic nisi carmina defunt; *or* nihil hic deest nisi carmina. Omnia, quibus turbari solita erat civitas, domi discordia, foris bellum exortum; Duo millia et quadringenti cæsi, *Liv.* This construction is most usual, when the different substantives resemble one another in sense; as, Mens, ratio, et consilium in senibus est, *Understanding, reason, and prudence is in old men.*

Obf. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et*; as,

Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, *Virg.* The conjunction is frequently understood; as, Dum ætas, metus, magister prohibebant, *Ter.* Frons, oculi, vultus sæpe mentiuntur, *Cic.*

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis*.

LX. The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, *ne*, *utinam*, and *dummodo*, are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode; as,

Lego ut discam,

I read that I may learn.

Utinam sapires,

I wish you were wise.

Obf. 1. All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives; as, *Quantus, qualis, quotus, quotuplex, uter*; Pronouns, *quis, & cujus*; Adverbs, *as, Ubi, quo, unde, qua, quorsum, quamdiu, quamdudum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, num, utrum, quomodo, qui, ut, quam, quanto-pere*; or Conjunctions, *as, ne, an, anne, annon*: Thus, *Quis est?* Who is it? *Nescio quis sit*; I do not know who it is. An venturus est? *Nescio, dubito, an venturus sit.* Viden' ut alta stet nive candidum Soraete, *Hor.* But these words are sometimes joined with the indicative; as *Scio quid ago, Plaut.* Haud scio an amat, *Ter.* Vide avaritia quid facit, *Id.* Vides quam turpe est, *Cic.*

¶ In like manner the Relative *QUI* in a continued discourse; as, *Nihil est quod Deus efficere non possit. Quis est, qui utilia fugiat?* *Cic.* Or when joined with *QUIPPE* or *UTPOTE*; *Neque Antonius procul aberat, utpote qui sequeretur, &c. Sall.* But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the Indicative. So *Est qui, sunt qui, est quando v. ubi, &c.* are joined with the indicative or subjunctive.

NOTE, *Haud scio an recte dixerim, is the same with dico, affirmo, Cic.*

Obs. 5. The excess or defect of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; as,

Est decem digitis altior quam frater, He is ten inches taller than his brother, or by ten inches. *Altero tanto major est fratre*, i. e. *duplo major*, He is as big again as his brother, or twice as big. *Sesquiped minor*, a foot and a half less; *Altero tanto, aut sesquimajor*, As big again, or a half bigger, *Cic.* *Ter tanto pejor est*; *Bis tanto amici sunt inter se, quam prius*, *Plaut.* *Quinque tanto amplius, quam quantum licitum fuit, civitatibus imperavit*, five times more, *Cic.* To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative, to increase its force; as, *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimis, &c.* thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, The more they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melius, tanto felicius*, The better, the happier. We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto*, also joined with superlatives: *Multo pulcherrimam eam haberemus*, *Sall.* *Multoque id maximum fuit*, *Liv.*

The ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXII. A Substantive and a Participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

<i>Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebræ,</i>	{ The sun rising, or while the sun
	{ riseth, darkness flies away.
<i>Opere peracto, ludemus,</i>	{ Our work being finished, or when
	{ our work is finished, we will play.

So, *Dominante libidine, temperantia nullus est locus*; *Nihil amicitia præstabilis est, excepta virtute*; *Oppressa libertate patriæ, nihil est quod speremus amplius*; *Nobilium vita victuque mutato, mores mutari civitatum puto*, *Cic.* *Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi cogerentur, pugnam inituris, et dictatore arcem Romanam respectante, ut ab auguribus, simul aves rite admisset, ex composito tolleretur signum*, *Liv.*

Obs. 1. This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence.

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place: the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of; as, *Milites, hostibus victis, redierunt*, The soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus victis*, may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. The enemy conquered, or being conquered; 2. When or after the enemy is or was conquered; 3. By conquering the enemy; 4. Upon the defeat of the enemy, &c.

Obs. 2. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute; as, *Cicero locutus hæc confedit*, never *his locutis*. The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them; like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs; as, *Romani adepti libertatem floruerunt*; or *Romani, libertate adepti, floruerunt*. But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore find them rarely used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. The participle *existente* or *existentibus* is frequently understood; as, *Cæsare duce, scil. existente*. His consulis; *scil. existentibus*. *Invitâ Minervâ, sc. existente, against the grain*; *Crassâ Minervâ, without learning, Hor.* *Magistrâ ac duce naturâ; vivis fratribus; te hortatore; Cæsare impulsore, &c.* Sometimes the substantive must be supplied; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regionem hostes petissent, i. e. cum nondum compertum esset, Liv.* *Excepto quod non simul esses, cætera lætus, Hor.* In such examples *negotio* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive; as, *Vale dicto*, having said farewell, *Ovid.*

Obs. 4. We sometimes find a Substantive plural joined with a participle singular; as, *Nobis præsentē*, *Plaut.* *Absente nobis*, *Ter.* We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb; as, *Me duce ad hunc voti finem, me milite veni, Ovid.* But examples of this construction very rarely occur.

Obs. 5. The ablative called absolute is governed by some preposition understood; as, *a, ab, cum, sub, or in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed; as, *Cum diis juvantibus, Liv.* The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely; as, *Perniciosa libidine paulisper usus, infirmitas naturæ accusatur, Sall. Jug. 1.*

Obs. 6. The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways: thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *Cum, dum, or quando Superbus regnabat*. *Opere peracto*, is the same with *Post opus peractum, or Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obs. 7. When a substantive is joined with a participle in English independently on the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative; as, *Illo descendente*, He descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.

be directed by me, *Id. aures, to listen*; *oblivioni, to forget*; *civitatem ei, to make one free of the city*; *dicta, to speak*; *verba alicui, to impose on, to cheat*; *se in viam, to enter on a journey*; *viam ei, to give place*; *jus gratiæ, to sacrifice justice to interest*; *se turpiter, to make a shabby appearance*; *fundum, vel domum alicui mancipio, to convey the property of, to warrant the title to*; *Vitaque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus usu, Lucr. servos in quæstionem, to give up slaves to be tortured*; *primas, secundas, &c. (sc. partes) actioni, to ascribe every thing to delivery, Cic. Dat ei bibere, Ter. comas diffundere ventis, to let them flow loose, Virg. Da mihi v. nobis, tell us, Cic. Ut res dant se, as matters go; solertem dabo, I'll warrant him expert, Ter.*

SATISDARE judicatum solvi, to give security that what the judge has determined shall be paid, Cic.

STARE contra aliquem; *ab, cum, v. pro aliquo, to side with, to be of the same party*; *judicio ejus, to follow*; *in sententia*; *pacto, conditionibus, conventis, to stand to, to make good an agreement*; *re judicatâ, to keep to what has been determined*; *stare v. constare animo, to be in his senses*: *Non stat per me quo minus pecunia solvatur, It is not owing to me that, &c. multorum sanguine ea Pænis victoria stetit, cost, Liv. Mihi stat alere morbum desinere, I am resolved, Nep.*

ADSTARE mensæ, to stand by; *ad mensam, in conspectu.*

CONSTARE ex multis rebus, animo et corpore, to consist of; *secum, to be consistent with, Cic. liber constitit v. stetit mihi duobus assibus, cost me; non constat ei color, his colour comes and goes; auri ratio constat, the sum is right. Constat, imperf. It is evident, certain or agreed on; mihi, inter omnes, de hac re.*

EXTARE aquis, to be above, Ovid. *ad memoriam posteritatis, to remain, Cic.*

INSTARE victis, to press on the vanquished; *rectam viam, to be in the right way*; *currum Marti, to make speedily, Virg. instat factum, insists that it was done, Ter.*

OBSTARE ei, to hinder.

PRÆSTARE multa, to perform; *alicui, v. aliquem virtute, to excel; silentium ei, to give; auxilium, to grant, Juv. impensas, to defray; iter tutum, to procure; se incolumem, to preserve; se virum, i. e. præbere, exhibere; amorem, v. benevolentiam alicui, to shew; culpam v. damnum, i. e. in se transferre, to take on one's self; præstabo de me; cum facturum, I will be answerable. In iis rebus repetendis quæ mancipi sunt, is periculum judicii præstare debet, qui se nexu obligavit, In recovering, or in an action to recover, those things, which are transferable, the seller ought to take upon himself the hazard of a trial, Cic. N. B. Those things were called, *Res mancipi, (contracted for mancipii, i. e. quas emptor manu caperet,) the property of which might be transferred from one Roman citizen to another, as, houses, lands, slaves, &c.**

Præstat, imperf. i. e. it is better: Præsto esse alicui, adv. to be present, to assist; Libri præstant venales, the books are exposed to sale.

ACCUBARE alicui in convivio, *to recline near*; apud aliquem. Incubare ovis & ova, *to sit upon*; stratis & super strata.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

HABERE spem, febrem, finem, bonum exitum, tempus, consuetudinem, voluntatem nocendi, opus in manibus, *v. inter manus, to have*; gratiam & gratum, *to have a grateful sense of a favour*; judicium, *to hold a trial*; honorem ei, *to honor*; in oculis, *to be fond of*, Ter.: fidem alicui, *to trust or believe*; curam de, *v. pro eo*; rationem alicujus, *to pay regard to, to allow one to stand candidate for an office*; rationem *v. rem cum aliquo, to have business with*; satis, *to be satisfied*; orationem, concionem ad populum, *to make a speech*; aliquem odio, in odium, *to hate*; ludibrio, *to mock*; id religioni, *to have a scruple about it*: So, habere aliquid quæstui, honori, prædæ, voluptati, &c. se sibi; se bene *v. graviter, to be well or ill*; se parce & duriter, *to live*, Ter. aliquid compertum, cognitum, perspectum, exploratum, certum *v. pro certo, to know for certain*; aliquem contemptui, despiciatui, -um, *v. in despiciatui, to despise*; excusatum, *to excuse*; susque deque, *to scorn, to slight*; Ut res se habet, *stands, &c.*; rebus ita se habentibus, *in this state of affairs*; Hæc habeo, *v. habui dicere de, &c.* Non habeo necesse scribere, quid sim facturus, Cic. Habe tibi tuas res, *a form of divorce*.

ADHIBERE diligentiam; celeritatem, vim, severitatem in aliquem, *to use*; in convivium *v. consilium, to admit*; remedium vulneri, curationem morbo, *to apply*; vinum ægrotis, *to give*; aures versibus, *to hear with taste*; cultum & preces diis, *to offer*, Cic. Exhibere molestiam alicui, *to cause trouble*.

JUBERE legem, *to vote for, to pass*; aliquem salvere, *to wish one health*; esse bono animo, &c. Uxorem suas res sibi habere jussit, *divorced*, Cic.

DOCEO te hanc rem, & de hac re. Doctus, *adj. utriusque linguæ*; Latinis & Græcis literis; Latine & Græce; ad militiam.

MISCERE aliquid alicui, cum aliquo, ad aliquid; vinum aquâ, Plin. cuncta sanguine, Tacit. sacra profanis, Hor.

VIDERE rem *v. de re*; sibi, de isthoc, *to take care of*, Ter. plus, *to be more wise*, Cic. De hac tu videris, *consider, be answerable for*, Cic. Videor videre, *methinks I see*; visus sum audire, *methought I heard*; mihi visus est dicere, *be seemed*; Quid tibi videtur? *What think you?* Si tibi videtur, *if you please*; videtur fecisse, &c.

INVIDERE honorem ei, *v. honori ejus*; ei vel eum, *to envy*.

PROVIDERE & prospicere id, *to foresee*; ei, *to provide for*; in posterum; rei frumentariæ, rem *v. de re*.

SEDERE ad dextram ejus; in equo, *to ride*; toga bene sedet, *sits*; Sedet hoc animo, *is fixed*, Virg.

versus, *ſc.* to write a play, *ſc.* copiam conſilii ei, to offer advice; fidem, to procure or give credit; periculum, to make trial; poteſtatem fui, to expoſe himſelf, Nep. aliquem loquentem v. loqui, to ſuppoſe or repreſent, Cic. piraticam, *ſc.* rem, to be a pirate; argentariam, medicinam, mercaturam, *ſc.* to be an uſurer, a phyſician, *ſc.* verſuram, to contract a new debt, to diſcharge an old one, to borrow money at great intereſt, Cic. cum v. ab aliquo, to ſide with; contra v. adverſus, to oppoſe; nomen v. nomina, to borrow money, and alſo to ſettle accounts, i. e. rationes acceptarum ſc. pecuniarum et expenſarum inter ſe conferre; nomen in litura, to write it where ſomething was before, Cic. pedem, to ſail with a ſide wind, Virg. Fac ita eſſe, ſuppoſe it is ſo; obvius fieri alicui, to meet; ne longum, v. longa faciam, not to be tedious; equus non facit, will not move, Cic.

AFFICERE aliquem laude, honore, præmio, et ignominiâ, pomâ, morte, leto, *ſc.* to praife, honor, *ſc.* to diſgrace, puniſh, *ſc.* Affectus ætate, morbo, weakened.

CONFICERE bellum, to finiſh; orationes, to compoſe, Nep. cibum, to chew; argentum, to raiſe, to get; alſo to ſpend, Cic. cum aliquo de re, to conclude a bargain; exercitus hoſtium, to deſtroy, Liv. Qui ſtipendiis conſectis erant, i. e. emeriti, had ſerved out their time, Cic.

DEFICERE animo, to faint; ab aliquo, to revolt; tempus deficit mihi v. me, fails: Deſci viribus, ratione, *ſc.* to be deprived of.

INFICERE ſe vitro, to ſtain; Infectus, part. ſtained; infectus, adj. not done. Inficior, -atus, -ari, to deny.

OFFICERE alicui, to hinder or hurt; Diogeni apicanti, to ſtand betwixt him and the ſun; auribus, viſui, to ſtop or obſtruct; Umbra terræ ſoli officiens noctem efficit, Cic.

PRÆFICERE aliquem exercitui, to ſet over. Proficere alicui, to proſit, to do good; in philoſophia, et progreſſus facere, to make progreſs.

REFICERE muros, rates, res, to repair; animum, vires, ſaucios, ſe, jumenta, to reſreſh, to recover.

SUFFICERE laboribus, iſtibus, to be able to bear; arma v. vires alicui, to afford; Valerius in locum Collatini ſuſſectus eſt, was ſubſtituted, Liv. Filius patri ſuſſectus, Tacit. Oculos ſuſſecti ſanguine et igne, *ſc.* ſecundum, having their eyes red and inflamed, Virg.

SATISFACERE alicui, in v. de aliqua re, to ſatisfy; ſidei, promiſſo, to perform.

JACERE aliquem in præceps; contumelias in eum, to throw; fundamenta, et ponere, to lay; talos, to play at dice; anchoram, to caſt.

ADJICERE to add; oculos alicui rei, to coveit; animum ſtudiis, to apply.

CONJICERE ſe in pedes, v. fugam, to fly; cætera, to conjecture.

INJICERE manus ei, to lay on; ſpem, ardorem, ſuſpicionem, pavorem, alicui, to inſpire; admirationem fui cuius ipſo aſpectu, *Nep.*

OBJICERE se hostibus, in *v.* ad omnes casus, *to oppose, or expose*; crimen ei, *to lay to one's charge.*

REJICERE tela in hostes, *to throw back*; jñlices, mala, *to reject*; rem ad senatum, Romam, *to refer*; rem ad Idus Febr. *to delay*, Cic.

SUBJICERE ova gallinæ, *to set an hen*; se imperio alicujus, *to submit*; testamenta, *to forge*; testes, *to suborn*; partes *vel* species generibus, ex quibus emanant, *to put or class under*; aliquid ei, *to suggest*; libellum ei, i. e. in manus dare; odio civium, *to expose*; bona Pomperii *vel* fortunas hastæ, *vel* voci et sub voce præconis, *to expose to public sale*, Cic. sub hasta venire, *to be sold*, Liv.

TRAJICERE copias *vel* exercitum, fluvium, Hellespontum, *vel* trans fluvium, *to transport*; Marius cum parva navicula in Africam trajetus est, *passed or sailed over*. Trajetus ferro, *pierced*.

CAPERE conjecturam, consilium, dolorem, fugam, specimen, spem, sedem, &c. *to guess, consult, grieve, fly, essay, hope, sit, &c.* augurium, *vel* auspicium, et agere, *to take an omen*; exemplum de aliquo; locum castris; terram, *to alight*; insulam, summa, *sc.* loca, *to reach*; spolia ex nobilitate, *to gain*, Sull. de republica nihil præter gloriam, Nep. magistratum, *to receive or enjoy*; virginem vestalem, *to chuse*; amentiam, spiritus, superbiam alicujus, *to bear, to contain*; aliquem consilio, perfidiâ, *to catch*; nec te Troja capit, Virg. Ædes vix nos capiunt, *the house hardly contains us*: Altero oculo capitur, *blind of one eye*; capitur locis, *he is delighted with*, Virg.

ACCIPERE pecuniam, vulnus, cladem, injuriam ab aliquo, *to receive*; Orbis terrarum divitias accipere nolo pro patriæ caritate, Nep. binas literas eodem exemplo, *two copies of the same letter*, Cic. clamorem, de Socrate, *to hear*; id in bonam partem, *to take in good part, to understand in a good sense*; omnia ad contumeliam, aliter, aliorum ac, atque, Ter. rudem, *vel* rude donari, *to be discharged as a gladiator*; aliquem bene *vel* male, *to treat*; eum male acceptum in Mediam hiematum coegit redire, *roughly handled*, Nep. rogationem, *to approve the bill*; nomen, i. e. ad petendum admittere, *to allow to stand candidate*; omen, *to esteem good*; satisfactionem *v.* excusationem, Cæsar. Acceptus plebi, *apud plebem, popular.*

CONCIPERE verba juramenti, *to prescribe the form of an oath*; conceptis verbis jurare: inimicitias cum aliquo, *to bear enmity to one*; aquam, *to gather, to form the head of an aquæduct*, Frontinus.

EXCIPERE eum hospitio, *to entertain*; fugientes, *to catch*; extremum spiritum cognatorum; sanguinem paterâ, *to keep or gather*; notis, et scribere, *to write in short hand*; motus futuros, *to*

R

perceive; *Hos homines excipio*, I except; *virtutem excipit immortalitas*; *turbulentior annus exceptit*, succeeded; *sic exceptit regia Juno*, replied, *Virg.*

INCIPERE, occipere, to begin. *Percipere fructus*, to reap.

PRÆCIPERE futura, to foresee; *gaudia, spem victoriæ*, to anticipate; *pecuniam mutuam*, to take before the time, *Cæsar*; *lac*, to dry up, *Virg.* *alicui id, vel de ea re*, to order; *artem ei*, to teach.

RECIPERE aliquid, to receive; *urbem*, to recover; *cum tectis*, to entertain; *se v. pedem*, to retreat; *se domum*, to return; *se, mentem, animum*, to come to one's self again, to recover spirits; *in se*, to take charge; *alicui*, to promise; *se ad frugem*, to amend; *senem sessum*, to give a seat to, *Cic.*

RAPERE *vel trahere in pejorem partem*, to take a thing in the worst sense; *in jus*, to bring before a judge; *partes inter ic*, to share, *Liv.*

EXUERE vestes sibi, *se vestibus*; *jugum sibi, se jugo*, to cast off; *fidem, sacramentum*, to break; *mentem*, to change, *Virg.* *hostem castris*, to beat from.

RUERE ad interitum, *in ferrum*; *cæteros, Ter. spumas*, to drive or toss, *Virg.*

LUERE pœnas capitis, to suffer; *æs alienum*, to pay, *Curt.* *culpam suam vel alterius, morte, sanguine*, to expiate, to atone or suffer for.

ELVERE amicitias remissione usûs, to drop gradually, *Cic.*

STATUERE exemplum in hominem, *v. -ne*, to make one a public example; *aliquem capite in terram, Ter.*

CONSTITUERE coloniam, to settle; *agmen paulisper*, to make to stop or halt, *Sall. in digitis*, to count on one's fingers, *Cic.* *urbem*, to build, *Ovid.* *Is hodie venturum ad me constituit domum*, appointed, resolved, *Ter.* *Si utilitas amicitiam constituit tollet eadem*, makes, constitutes, *Cic.* *Corpus bene constitutum*, a good constitution, *Id.*

DESTITUERE aliquem, to forsake; *spem*, to deceive; *propositum*, to give over, *Ovid.* *deos pactâ mercede*, to defraud, *Hor.*

INSTITUERE aliquem secundum hæredem filio, to appoint, *Cic.* *collegium fabrorum*, to institute, to found, *Plin.* *aliquem doctrinâ, Græcis literis*, to instruct; *naves*, to build, *Cæsar.* *sermonem*, to enter upon, *Id.* *animum ad cogitandum*, to settle; *antequam pro Muræna dicere instituo*, I begin, *Cic.*

PRÆSTITUERE petitori, *qua actione illum uti oporteat*, to prescribe to the prosecutor what form of process he should use, *Cic.* *tempus ei*, to determine.

RESTITUERE exules; *virginem suis*, to restore; *oppida vicofque*, to repair; *aciem inclinâtam*, to rally; *prælium*, to renew, *Liv.*

SUBSTITUERE aliquem in locum ejus, *pro altero*, to substitute or put in the place of, *Cic.*

STRUERE epulas, to prepare ; infidias, mendacium, to contrive ; odium, crimen alicui, *v.* in aliquem, to raise against.

SCRIBERE sua manu, bene, velociter, epistolam alicui, *vel* ad aliquem ; bellum, *vel* de bello ; milites, to enlist ; supplementum militibus, to recruit them ; hæredem, to make one his heir ; dicant ei, to raise an action against one ; nummos, to give a bill of exchange ; de rebus suis scribi cupivit, Cic. Decemvir legibus scribendis, Liv.

ASCRIBERE aliquem civitati, in civitatem, *v.* -e, to make free.

DESCRIBERE aliquem, to describe and not to name ; partes Italiæ, pecuniam, populum ordinibus, to distribute, to divide ; vœtigal civitatibus, i. e. imperare ; jura, i. e. dare *v.* constituere ; censores binos in singulas civitates, i. e. facere, Cic.

INSCRIBERE literas alicui, to direct a letter ; librum, to entitle or name ; ædes mercede, to put a ticket on one's house to let, Ter.

PROSCRIBERE bona alicujus, ædes suas, auctionem, to publish to be sold, to set to sale ; aliquem, to banish, to outlaw.

RESCRIBERE alicujus literis *v.* ad literas, alicui ad aliquid, to write an answer ; pecuniam, to pay money by bill ; legionem ad equum, to set foot soldiers on horseback, Cæf.

SUBSCRIBERE exemplum literarum, to write below ; causæ, to join or take part in an accusation ; Cæsaris iræ, to favour, Ovid.

DICERE aliquid, *vel* de aliqua re, ex aliquo loco, alicui, ad *vel* apud aliquem ; in aliquem, against ; ad aliquid, in answer to ; sententiam, to give an opinion ; jus, to administer justice, to pronounce sentence ; mulctam ei, to amerce or fine ; diem ei, to appoint a day for his trial before the people ; prodicere, to put it off ; causam, to plead ; testimonium, to give evidence ; non idem loqui est ac dicere, to harangue, Cic. sacramento, *seldom* -um, to take the military oath.

ADDICERE aliquid ei, to call out at an auction, to sell ; servituti, *v.* in servitutem, to sentence or adjudge to bondage ; bona, to give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor ; se alicui, to devote himself to one's service ; aves non addixerunt, *v.* abdixerunt, the birds did not give a favorable omen ; pretio addictam habere fidem, to be corrupt, Cic.

CONDICERE operam alicui, to promise assistance ; cœnam alicui, *vel* ad cœnam, to propose supping with one without invitation.

EDICERE alicui, to order ; delectum, to appoint a levy ; prædam militibus, to promise by an edict ; justitium, diem comitiis, *v.* comitia consulibus creandis, to appoint.

INDICERE bellum, justitium, to proclaim war ; legem sibi, to appoint, Cic. cœtus in domos tribunorum, to summon, Liv. indicare, to shew ; Indictus, an adj. not said ; causâ indictâ, *v.* non cognitâ condemnari, to be condemned without being heard ; me indicente, hæc non sunt, not telling, Ter.

INTERDICERE alicui aliquid, *v.* aliqua re, *fœminis* usum *puræ*, to forbid or debar from; *ei* aqua & igne, *v.* aquam et ignem, to banish; male rem gerentibus bonis paternis interdici solet, Cic. interdici non poterat focero gener, discharged the company of, Nep.

PRÆDICERE alicui aliquid, de aliqua re, id in hæc re, to foretell, to forewarn.

DUCERE in carcerem, to lead; exercitum, to command; spiritum, animam, vitam, to breathe, to live; fossam, murum, to make or draw; bellum, to prolong, *also* to carry on, Virg. ætatem, dicam, to spend; uxorem, to take a wife; in jus, to summon before a judge; aliquem, et vultum alicujus, ære, ex ære, de auro, marmore, &c. to make a statue; genus, nomen ab *vel* ex aliquo, to derive; omnia pro nihilo, infra se; id ei laudi, laudem, *vel* in laudem, oftener the first, to reckon on it a praise to him; in conscientiam, to impute to a consciousness of guilt; in gloria, Plin. in crimen, Tacit. centesimas, *sc.* usuras, *vel* *fœnus* centesimis, to compute interest at one for the hundred a month; or at 12 per cent per annum; binis centesimis *fœnerari*, to take 24 per cent per annum, Cic. ducere longas voces in fletum, to draw out, Virg. ordines, to be a centurion, Liv. ilia, to pant like a broken winded horse, Hor.

ADDUCERE aliquem in judicium, ad arbitrium meum, to bring to a trial; in suspicionem regi, Nep. arcum, to draw in; habenas, to straiten the reins.

CONDUCERE aliquem ex loco, to convey; navem, domum, coquos, to hire; columnam faciendam, to engage to make at a certain price; Conducit hoc tuæ laudi, in *vel* ad rem, is of advantage.

DEDUCERE naves, to launch; classem in prælium, to bring, Nep. equites, to make to alight, Liv. eum domum, to accompany, to carry home; de sententia, Cic. coloniam, to transplant; lacum, to drain.

EDUCERE gladium e vagina, to draw; florem Italiæ, to lead out, Cic. filium, to educate, oftener educare; in astra, to extol, Hor.

INDUCERE tenebras clarissimis rebus, to bring on, Cic. animum, *v.* in animum, to persuade himself; scuta pellibus, to cover, Cæsar. soleas pedibus, *v.* in pedes, to put on; colorem picturæ, to varnish, Plin. nomina, to cancel or rase, to rub out.

OBducERE exercitum, to lead against; callum dolori, to blunt it; sepulchrum sentibus, to cover.

REDUCERE aliquem in memoriam alicujus, *v.* alicui aliquid in memoriam, to bring back to one's remembrance; in gratiam cum aliquo, to reconcile; Vallis reducta, retired or low.

PRODUCERE testes, to bring out; funus, to attend; sermonem in noctem, to prolong, to continue; rem in hiemem, to defer, *fœvos* vendendos, to bring to market.

SUBDUCERE se a custodibus, to steal away; naves, to draw up on shore; cibum ei et deducere, to take from; summam, rationes, to reckon, to cast up accounts.

PARCERE sibi, labori, to spare, &c. a cædibus, to forbear; aurum natis, Virg.

ASSUESCERE rei alicui, *vel* re aliqua, in *vel* ad hoc, to be accustomed; mentem pluribus et assuefacere, Hor. Animis bella, Virg. to accustom. So insuesco rei *vel* re; insuevit hoc me pater, Hor.

SCISCERE legem, to vote, to decree; hence plebiscitum.

ASCISCERE regium nomen, to assume; socios sibi, ad societatem sceleris, to associate; ritus peregrinos, to adopt.

CONSCISCERE mortem *v.* necem sibi, to kill one's self; fugam sibi, to flee, Liv.

DISCERE aliquid ab aliquo, *v.* apud aliquem, ex aliqua re, *or* without ex: Dediscere, to forget what he hath learned; Ediscere, to get by heart.

DESCENDERE de palatio, præsidio, ædibus; in forum, curiam, campum; ad accusandum, ad omnia, ad extrema, to have recourse to, Cic.

LUDERE aleâ, *v.* -am, to play at dice; par impar, at even and odd; operam, to lose one's labour.

ALLUDERE alicui, ad aliquem: Colludere ei, cum eo; Illudere ei, eum, in eum, in eo; id, to mock.

EVADERE infidias, -is, *v.* ex, to escape; in muros, to mount: Hæc quorsum evadant, nescio, to what they will turn out: Clarus evasit, became.

CEDERE multa multis de suo jure, Cic. Bona creditoribus, to yield, whence cessio bonorum; alicui loca, de, a, ex loco, *vel* locum, to give place; vitâ, e vita decedere, to die; foro, to turn bankrupt; Hæreditas cedit mihi, falls to; Cedit in proverbium, becomes.

ACCEDERE oppidum, -do, ad *v.* in oppidum, to approach; ad conditiones, to agree to; Ciceroni, sententiæ, *vel* ad sententiam ejus, to agree with; ad Ciceronem, to go to; ad rempublicam, to bear the questorship, or the first public office; ad amicitiam Philippi, to gain the friendship of, Nep. Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accedit etiam, Ter. Robur accessit ætati, Cic. Animi accessere hosti, Liv. Ad corporis firmitatem plura animi bona accesserant, Nep. Accedit plurimum pretio; huc accedit, quod, is added.

ANTECEDERE alicui rei; aliquem, *rarely* alicui, to excel.

CONCEDERE ei aliquid et de aliquo; paulum de suo jure; tempus ad rem, to grant; ab oculis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiberna, to retire, to go; fato, naturæ, vitâ, to die; in sententiam ejus, to come into one's measures; in conditiones, to agree to, Liv.

DISCEDERE transversum, et latum unguem, *v.* digitum a re, to depart in the least.

INTERCEDERE legi, to give a negative against, to oppose a law; pecuniam pro aliquo, to become surety; Intercedit mihi tecum amicitia *v.* inter nos, there is, &c.

SUCCEDERE ei in locum ejus, to succeed; muro, *v.* murum; ad urbem; sub primam aciem; in pugnam, to come up to.

CADERE altè, ab alto, in terram, to fall; causâ, formulâ, in judicio, et litem perdere, to lose one's cause, to be cast; in *vel* sub sensum, oculos, potestatem, &c. in morbum, et incidere, Cic. Non cadit in virum bonum mentiri, is incapable of, Cic. Homini lachrymæ cadunt, quasi puero, gaudio, Ter.

ACCIDERE genibus, *v.* ad genua, to fall at; auribus *v.* ad aures, to come to; alicui, casu, præter opinionem, to happen; accidit in se istud verbum, applies, Ter.

TENDERE vela, to stretch; insidias, retia, plagas, &c. to lay snares; arcum, to bend; iter, cursum, to direct; ad altiora, in cœlum, to aim at; extra vallum, *sc.* tabernaculum, to pitch a tent; Manibus tendit divellere nodos, tries, Virg.

ATTENDO te, Cic. tibi, Plin. de hac re, ad hanc rem, to take heed; animum ad rem; res hostium, Sall.

CONTENDERE nervos, omnibus nervis, to exert one's self; aliquid ab aliquo, to ask earnestly: inter se; amori, poet. *for* cum amore, to strive; causas, *sc.* inter se, to compare, Cic. Aliquid ad aliquid, cum aliquo, et alicui.

COMPREHENDERE naturam rerum, to understand; rem pluribus et luculentioribus verbis, to express; aliquem humanitate, amicitia, to gain; rem fictam, to discover.

INTENDERE animum rei, ad *v.* in rem, to apply: Intendi animo in rem, Liv. Vocem, nervos, to exert; arcum, to bend; actionem *v.* litem alicui *v.* in aliquem, *also* impingere, to raise a law-suit against one; telum ei, *v.* in eum, to shoot at; manum *v.* digitum in aliquid, to point at; aliquo, *sc.* ire, to go to; officia, to overdo, to do more than is required, Sall.

OBTENDERE velum rei, *v.* rem velo, to cover, to veil.

PENDERE pecuniam, to pay; pœnas, to suffer; id parvi, to value it little.

SUSPENDERE aliquem arbori, de, in, *v.* ex arbore, to hang; expectatione, *v.* suspensum detinere, to keep in suspense; ædificium, to arch a house; naso adunco, to sneer at, Horat.

ABDERE *sc.* literis, in literas, to hide or shut one's self among books; se domum, rus, &c. domo, Virg. in silvas, tenebras, &c.

CONDERE urbem, to build; fructus, to lay up; in carcerem, to imprison; carmen, to compose; lumina, to close, Ovid. Jura, to establish; terrâ, sepulchro, in sepulchro, to bury.

DEDERE se alicui, in ditionem alicujus, ad aliquem, to surrender; Deditus præceptori, et studiis, fond of; vino epulisque, engaged in, Nep. deditâ operâ, on purpose.

EDERE librum, to publish; et in lucem; ovum, to lay; sonos, cantus, risus, gemitus, questus, hinnitum, pugnam, stragem, to sound, sing, &c. munus gladiatorum, to exhibit a shew of gladiators; nomen, to mention; fortus, to bring forth; extremum spiritum, to die; exempla cruciatum in aliquem, to inflict exemplary torture.

OBDERE pessulum foribus, to bolt the door.

PRODERE arcem hostibus, to betray; aliquid posteris, *v.* memoriz, to hand down; genus ab aliquo, to derive; flaminem, interregem, to appoint; aliquot dies nuptiis, to put off, Ter.

REDDERE animum, se sibi, to revive; animam *v.* vitam, to die; Latine, verbum verbo, to translate; matrem, i. e. referre, to resemble; epistolam alicui, to deliver.

SUBDERE calcar equo, to spur; spiritus alicui, to encourage.

CREDERE rem; homini, to believe; aliquid alicui, to trust; pecuniam ei per syngrapham, to lend on bond or bill; rumoribus credi non oportet; Itaque credo si, &c, I suppose, Cic.

JUNGERE se cum aliquo, alicui, & ad aliquem; dextram dextræ; equos curru; amnem ponte, to make a bridge.

ADJUNGERE accessionem ædibus, to build an addition to one's house; animum ad studia, to apply.

STRINGERE cultrum, gladium, enses, to draw; frondes, to lop off; glandes, baccas, to beat down; rem, to waste one's fortune, Hor. littus, to touch, to brush, or gaze upon, Virg.

TANGERE rem acu, to hit the nail on the head.

ATTINGERE Britanniam navibus, to reach; reges, res summas, to mention, Nep. Aliquem cognatione, affinitate, to be related to; forum, to reach manhood, Cic. Res non te attingit, concerns.

FINGERE orationem, to polish; oratorem, to form; se ad arbitrium alterius, to adapt: Vultus amente fingitur, lingua fingit vocem, Cic. Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam, Nep.

FUNDERE aquam, to pour out; hostes, to rout.

EFFUNDERE fruges, copiam oratorum, to produce; ærarium, to spend; odium, i. e. dimittere, to drop; gratiam collectam, i. e. perdere; omnia, quæ tacuerat, to tell.

FRANGERE nucem, to break; navem, to suffer shipwreck; fœdus, fidem, to violate; sententiam ejus, to refute, Cic. hostem, to subdue.

AGERE gratias, to give thanks; vitam, to live; prædas, to plunder; fabulam, to act a play; triumphum de aliquo, ex aliqua re, to triumph; nugas, to trifle; ambages, to beat about the bush; stationem, custodiam urbis, to be on guard; rimas, to chink, to leak; causam, to plead: de re, to speak; radices, to take root; cuniculos, to undermine; undam, to raise a steam; animam, to be at the last gasp; alias res, to be inattentive; festum diem, natalem, &c. to keep, to observe; actum, *v.* rem actam, to labour in vain; cœsum, & habere, to make a review of the people, their estates, &c. forum,

200 Various Signification and Construction of Verbs.

to hold a court to try causes ; lege in aliquem, & cum aliquo, to go to law with one ; *hence* actor, a prosecutor ; in hereditatem, to claim ; cum populo, to treat with, to lay before ; decimum agit annum, he is ten years old ; id agitur, that is the question ; libertas agitur, *v.* de libertate, is at stake ; actum est de libertate, is lost ; actum est, *ilicet*, all is over ; actum est de pace, was treated about ; cum illo bene actum est, he has been lucky or well used ; hoc age, mind what you are about.

ADIGERE milites sacramento, ad *v.* in iusjurandum, in sua verba, per iusjurandum, to force to enlist ; arbitrum, *i. e.* agere *v.* cogere aliquem ad arbitrum, to force to submit to an arbitration, Cic.

COGERE copias, to bring together ; senatum, to assemble ; in fenatum, *s. minis*, pignoribus captis, &c. to force to attend ; agmen, to rally, to bring up ; lac, to curdle ; jus civile diffusum & dissipatum. in certa genera cogere, to digest, to arrange.

EXIGERE foras, to drive out, to divorce ; aliquid ad aliquo, to require ; sarta tecta, *s. et, i. e.* sarta et tecta, ut sint bene reparata, to require that the public works be kept in good reparation, Cic. supplicium de aliquo, to inflict ; sua nomina, to demand or call in one's debts ; avum, annos, to spend ; aliquid ad normam, to try or examine ; columnam ad perpendiculum, to apply the plummet ; to see if it be straight ; monumentum, to finish, Hor. tempus & modum, to settle ; Virg. comœdiam, to disapprove, to hiss off, Ter.

REDIGERE aliquid in memoriam alicujus, to bring back ; pecuniam ex bonis venditis, to raise money ; hostes sub imperium, to reduce.

LEGERE oram, littus, to coast along ; vela, to furl the sails ; halitum, to catch one's breath ; milites, to enlist ; aliquem in senatum, to choose ; sacra, to steal, to commit sacrilege, Hor.

TRAHERE obsidionem, bellum, to prolong ; purpuras, to spin ; aliquid in religionem, to scruple ; navem remulco, to tow.

DETRAHERE aliquem, to draw down ; alicui, *v.* de aliquo, de fama, to detract from, to lessen one's fame ; aliquid alicui, to take by force ; laudem, *v.* de laudibus ; novem partes multæ, to take from the fine, Nep.

EXTRAHERE diem, to spin out, to spend ; certamen, bellum, judicium, to prolong.

VEHERE, vehens, invehens, invehens curru, quadrigis, &c. riding in a chariot ; invehi in portum ex alto, to enter ; in aliquem, to inveigh against ; provehi longius, to proceed too far.

CONSULERE eum, to ask his advice ; ei, to consult for his good ; de salute sua, gravius in aliquem, to pass a severe sentence against ; in commune, publicum, medium, to provide for the common good ; verba boni, to take in good part ; ego consulor, my advice is asked ; mihi consulitur, my good is consulted ; mihi consultum ac provisum est, *for* a me, I have taken care, Cic.

ADIMERE claves uxori, to divorce; annulum *v.* equum equiti, to take away from a knight the ring or horse given him by the public, to degrade.

DIRIMERE litem, controversiam, to determine.

EXIMERE aliquem servitio, noxæ, e vinculis, a culpa, de numero proscriptorum, obsidione, to free; de dolio, to draw out; diem dicendo, to waste in speaking.

INTERIMERE se, to kill.

REDIMERE captivos, to ransom; pecuaria de censoribus, to take or farm the public pastures.

APPELLERE classem in Italiam, vel classem, to land on; se aliquo, Ter. ad villam nostram navis appelletur, Cic. animum ad philosophiam, to apply.

ANTECELLERE ei, rarely cum: excellere aliis, super, inter, præter alios aliqua re, *v.* in re, to excel.

TOLLERE animos, to take courage; animos alicui, to encourage; aliquem laudibus, & laudes ejus in astra, to extol; inducias, to break a truce; clamores, to cry; filium, to educate; de, *vel* e medio, to kill.

SUMERE in manus; diem, tempus ad deliberandam; exemplum ex *v.* de-co, to take; pœnas, supplicium de aliquo, to punish; pecunias mutuas, to borrow; togam virilem, to put on the dress of a man; sibi inimicitias, to get ill will; operam in re, *vel* in rem inferre, to bestow pains; sumo tantum, *vel* hoc mihi, I take this upon me.

PREMERE cascum, to make cheese; vocem, to be silent; dolorem corde, to conceal; vestigia ejus, to follow; littus, to come near; pollicem, to save a gladiator; librum in nonum annum, to delay publishing, Hor.

EXPRIMERE succum, to press out; risum alicui; pecuniam ab aliquo, to force from; effigiem, to draw to the life; verbum verbo, de verbo, e verbo, ad verbum, de Græcis, &c. to translate word for word.

IMPRIMERE aliquid animo, in animo, *v.* in animum, to imprint.

REPRIMERE se, & reprehendere *v.* retinere, to check.

PONERE spem in homine *v.* re, & habere; castra, to pitch; vitem, to plant; vitam, to die; ova, to lay; insidias alicui; panem convivis, *not* ante; personam amici, to lay aside the character of a friend; præmia, to propose; pocula, to stake or lay; studium, tempus, multum operæ in aliqua re, to employ, to bestow; aliquid in laude, in vitiis, in loco beneficii, to reckon: ferocia corda, to lay aside; aliquem in gratiam *v.* gratia, i. e. efficere gratiosum apud alterum, Cic.: ventos, to calm; hominem coloribus, saxo, to paint, engrave, Hor. pecuniam, to lay out at interest. Venti posuere, are hush'd, Virg. Pone esse victum eum, Ter. Positum sit, suppose, grant, Cic.

COMPONERE carmen, literas, &c. to compose; lites, to settle; bellum, to finish by treaty; parva magnis, dicta cum factis, to compare; manus manibus, to join, Virg.

DEPONENT VERBS.

PROFITERI philosophiam, to profess, to teach publicly; se candidatum, to declare himself a candidate for an office; pecunias, agros, nomina, &c. apud censores, to give an account of, to declare how much one has.

LOQUI cum aliquo, inter se; *sometimes* alicui, ad, v. apud aliquem; aliquid, de aliqua re.

SEQUI feras; sectam Cæsaris, to be of his party, Cic. *Assequi*, consequi, to overtake; gloriam, to attain. *Consequi* hereditatem, to get, Cic.

PROSEQUI aliquem amore, laudibus, &c. to love, praise, &c.

NITI hastâ; in cubitum, to lean; ejus consilio, in eo, to depend on; ad gloriam, ad, v. in summa, to aim at; in vetitum, in adversum, contra aliquem, pro aliquo, to strive; gradibus, to ascend.

UTI eo familiariter, to be familiar with one; ventis adversis, to have cross winds; honore usus, one who has enjoyed a post of honor.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

ESSE magni roboris, v. -no, -re; ejus opinionis, v. ea opinione; in maxima spe; in timore, luctu, opinione, itinere, &c. cum telo, cum imperio; magno periculo, v. in periculo; in tuto; apud se, in his sensus; sui juris, v. mancipii, to be at his own disposal; Res est in vado, is safe, Ter. Est animus, *sc.* mihi, I have a mind, Virg. Est ut, cur, quamobrem, quod, quin, &c. There is cause; bene, male est mihi, with me; nihil est mihi tecum, I have nothing to do with you: Quid est tibi, *sc.* rei, What is the matter with you? Ter. Cernere erat, one might see; religio est mihi id facere, I scruple to do it; si est, ut facere velit, ut facturus sit, ut admiserit, &c. for si velit, &c. Ter. Est ut viro vir latius ordinet arbuta sulcis, it happens, Hor. Certum est facere, *sc.* mihi, I am resolved, Ter. Non certum est, quid faciam, I am uncertain, Id. Cassius querere solebat, Cui Bono fuerit? Omnibus bono fuit, it was of advantage, Cic.

ADESSE pugnae, in pugna, ad exercitum, ad tempus, in tempore, cum aliquo, to be present; alicui, to favour, to assist; scribendo, v. esse ad scribendum, to subscribe one's name to a decree of the senate, Cic. consilio, utrique, to be a counsellor to, Nep.

ABESSE domo, urbe, a domo, to be absent; alicui, v. deesse, to be wanting, not to assist; a sole, to stand out of the sun; sumptus funeri defuit, he had not money to bury him, Liv. abesse a persona principis, to be inconsistent with the character, Nep. Paulum, v.

parum absuit quin urbem caperent, quin occideretur, &c. they were near taking, &c. Tantum abest ne enervetur oratio, ut, &c. is so far from being, &c. Cic. Tantum absuit a cupiditate pecuniæ, a societate sceleris, &c. Nep.

INTERESSE convivio, *v.* in convivio, to be at a feast; anni decem interfuerunt, intervened; stulto intelligens quid interest, Ter. Hoc dominus et pater interest, Id. Inter hominem & belluam hoc interest, Cic. differ in this, this is the difference; multum interest, utrum, it is of great importance. Pons inter eos interest, is between, Cic.

PRÆESSE exercitui, to command; comitiis, judicio, quæstioni, to preside in or at.

OBESSE ei, to hurt, to hinder.

SUPERESSE, to be over and above; alicui, to survive; modo vita supersit, *sc.* mihi, if I live; superest, ut, it remains, that.

IRE ad arma, ad faga, to go to war; in jus, to go to law; pedibus in sententiam alicujus, to agree with; viam, *v.* viâ; res bene eunt, Cic. Tempus, dies, mensis it, passes.

ABIRE magistratu, to lay down an office; in ora hominum, to be in every body's mouth; ab emptione, to retract his bargain; decem menses abierunt, have past, Ter. Non hoc tibi sic abibit, i. e. non feres hoc impune, Ter. Abi in malam rem, a form of imprecation.

ADIRE periculum capitis, to run the hazard of one's life.

EXIRE vitâ, *e, v.* de vita, to die; ære alieno, Cic. Verbum exit ex ore, Id. tela, to avoid, Virg. Tempus induciarum cum Veienti populo exierat, had expired, Liv.

INIRE magistratum; suffragium, rationem, consilium, pugnam, viam, &c. to enter upon; gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum *v.* ab eo, to gain his favour: Ineunte ætate, vere, anno, &c. in the beginning of; *but we seldom say*, Ineunte die, nocte, &c. Ab ineunte ætate, from our early years.

OBIRE diem edicti, *vel* auctionis, judicium, vadimonium, to be present at; provinciam, domos nostras, to visit, to go through, Cic. negotia, res, munus, officium, legationem, to perform; pugnas, Virg. mortem, *v.* morte; diem supremum, *v.* diem, to die.

PRÆIRE alicui, to go before; verba, carmen, *v.* sacramentum alicui, to repeat or read over before; alicui voce, quid judicet, to prescribe or direct by crying, Cic.

PRŒDIRE in publicum, to go abroad; non præterit te, you are not ignorant, Cic. Dies induciarum præterit, is past, Nep.

REDIRE in gratiam cum aliquo, to become friends again.

SUBIRE murum, *v.* -o, ad montes, to come up to; laborem, *v.* -i, onus, pœnam, periculum, to undergo; spes, timor subiit animum, came into.

VELLE aliquem, *sc.* alloqui *v.* conventum, to desire to speak with; alicui, ejus causâ, to wish one's good; tibi consultum volo; nihil

tibi negatum volo, I wish to deny, Liv. Quid sibi vult? What does he mean? Volo te hoc facere, hoc a te fieri; si quid recte curatum velis; illos monitos etiam atque etiam volo, *sc. esse*, I will admonish them again and again, Cic. nollem factum, I am sorry it was done; nollem huc exitum, *sc. esse a me*, I wish I had not come out here, Ter.

FERRE legem, to propose or make; privilegium de aliquo, to propose or pass an act of impeachment against one, Cic. rogationem ad populum, to bring in a bill; conditiones ei, to offer terms; suffragium, to vote; sententiam, to give an opinion; centuriam, *tribum*, to gain the vote of; perdere, to lose it; victoriam ex eo; omne punctum, omnia suffragia, to gain all the votes; repulsam, to be rejected; fructum, hoc fructi, to reap, Ter. lætitiā de re, to rejoice; præ se, to pretend or declare openly; alienam personam, to disguise one's self; in oculis, to be fond of, Ter. manus, to engage, Virg. acceptum et expensum, to mark down as received and spent or lent, as Dr. and Cr. Cic. animus, opinio fert, inclines; tempus, res, causa fert, allows, requires.

CONFERRE benevolentiam alicui, in *vel* erga aliquem, to shew; beneficia, culpam in eum, to confer, to lay; operam, tempus, studium ad *vel* in rem, et impendere, to apply; capita inter se, consilia sua, to lay their heads together, to consult; signa, arma, manus, to engage; omne bellum circa Corinthum, Nep. pedem, to set foot to foot; rationes, to cast up accounts; castra castris, to encamp over against one another; se in, *vel* ad urbem, to go to; tributa, to pay; se alicui, *vel* cum aliquo, to compare; neminem cum illo conferendum pietate puto, Cic. Hæc conferunt ad aliquid; oratori futuro, serve, are useful to, Quinct.

DEFERRE situlam *v. sitellam*, to bring the ballot-box; aliquid ad aliquem, to carry word, to tell; *rarely* alicui; causam ad patronos; honores ei; gubernacula reipublicæ in eum; summam rerum ad eum, to confer; in beneficiis ad ærarium, to recommend for a public service, Cic. aliquem ambitus, de ambitu, nomen alicujus, ad prætorem, apud magistratum, to accuse of bribery; primas *sc. partes* ei, to give him the preference, Cic.

DIFFERRE *v. transferre* rem in annum; post bellum, diem solutionis, to put off; rumores, to spread; ab aliquo, alicui, inter se, moribus, to differ in character; amore, cupiditate, doloribus, differri, to be distracted or torn asunder, Cic. & Ter.

EFFERRE fruges, to produce; verba, to utter; verbum de verbo expressum, to translate, Ter. pedem domo, to go out; corpus amplo funere, et cum funere, to bury; ad honorem, ad cælum laudibus, to raise, to extol; foras peccatum, to divulge.

INFERRE bellum patriæ; vim, manus, necem alicui, to bring upon; signa, se, pedem, to advance; litem, *v. periculum capitis* alicui, *vel* in aliquem, to bring one to a trial for his life.

OFFERRE se morti, ad mortem, in discrimen, to expose, to present.

PERFERRE legem, to carry through, to pass it.

PRÆFERRE facem ei, to carry before; salutem reipublicæ suis commodis, et anteferre, antepone, to prefer. Prælatum equo, riding before.

PROFERRE imperium, to enlarge; in medium, in apertum, in lucem, to publish; nuptias, diem, to delay.

REFERRE alicui, to answer; se v. pedem, to retreat; gratiam alicui, to make a requital; par pari, Ter. victoriam ab, v. ex aliquo, et reportare, to gain; institutum, to renew; judicia ad equestrem ordinem, to restore to the Equites the right of judging; aliquid, de aliqua re, ad senatum, ad consilium, ad sapientes, ad populum, to lay before; aliquid in tabulam, codicem, commentarium, &c. to mark down; aliquid acceptum alicui, et in acceptum, to acknowledge one's self indebted; pecunias acceptas et expensas, nomina v. summas in codicem accepti et expensi, to mark down accounts; alienos mores ad suos, to judge of by; in v. inter ærarios, to reduce to the lowest class; in numerum deorum, in v. inter deos, et repone, to rank among; pugnas, res gestas, to relate; patrem ore, to resemble; amissos colores, to regain, Horat.

TRANSFERRE rationes in tabulas, to post one's books, to state accounts; in Latinam linguam, to translate; verba, to use metaphorically; culpam in eum et rejicere, to lay the blame on him.

II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax* or *Construction* may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Hyperbāton*.

The two first respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the last respects only the arrangement of the words.

I. ELLIPSIS.

ELLIPSIS is when one or more words are wanting to complete the sense; as, Aiunt, ferunt, dicunt, perhibent, scil. homines: Dic mihi, Damæta, cujum pecus; that is, Dic (tu) mihi, Damæta, (cum hominem) cujum pecus (est hoc pecus.) Aberant bidui, scil. iter vel itinere. Decies sestertium, scil. centena millia. Quid multa? scil.

dicam. Antiquum obtines, scil. morem *vel* institutum, Plaut. Hodie in ludum occæpi ire literarium, ternas jam scio, scil. literas, i. e. AMO, Id. Triduo abs te nullas acceperam, scil. literas, i. e. epistolam, Cic. Brevis dicam, scil. sermone: So Complecti, respondere, &c. brevis. Dii meliora, sc. faciant: Rhodum volo, inde Athenas, sc. ire, Id. Bellicum, *vel* classicum canere, sc. signum, Liv. Civicâ donatus, sc. coronâ; So obsidionalem, muralem adeptus, &c. Id. Epistola librarii manu est sc. scripta, Cic. So in English, "The twelve," i. e. apostles; "The elect," i. e. persons.

When a conjunction is to be supplied, it is called **ASYNDETON**; as, Deus optimus maximus, scil. et; Sartum tectum conservare, i. e. fartum et tectum; So Abiit, excessit, evaluit, erupit, Cic. Ferte, ~~giti~~ *mittas*, date vela, impellite remos, Virg. Velis nolis, scil. seu.

To this figure may be reduced most of those irregularities in Syntax, as they are called, which are variously classed by grammarians, under the names of **ENNALAGE**, i. e. the changing of words and their accidents, or the putting of one word for another; **ANRIPŌSIS**, i. e. the putting of one case for another; **HELLENISM** or **GÆCISM**, i. e. imitating the construction of the Greeks; **SYNESIS**, i. e. referring the construction, not to the gender or number of the word, but to the sense, &c. thus, Samnitium duo millia cæsi, *is* Duo millia (*hominum*) Samnitium (*fuerunt homines*) cæsi, Liv. So Monstrum quæ, sc. mulier, Hor. Scelus qui, sc. homo, Ter. Omnia Mercurio similis, sc. secundum, Virg. Missi magnis de rebus uterque, legati; i. e. Missi legati (*et*) uterque (*legatus missus*) de magnis rebus, Horat. Servitia repudiabat, cujus, sc. servitii, Sall. Cat. 51. Familia nostra, quorum, &c. sc. hominum, Sall. Concursum populi, mirantium, Liv. Illum ut vivat, optant, for ut ille vivat, Ter. Populum late regem, for regnantem, Virg. Expediti militum, for milites; Classis stabat Rhegii, for ad Rhegium, Liv. Latium Capuaque agro multati, sc. homines, Id. Utraque formosæ, sc. mulieres, Ovid. Aperite aliquis ostium, Ter. Sensit delapsus, for delapsus, sc. se esse, Virg.

When a writer frequently uses the Ellipsis, his style is said to be elliptical or concise.

2. PLEONASM.

PLEONASM is when a word more is added than is absolutely necessary to express the sense; as, Video oculis, I see with my eyes; Sic ore locuta est: adest præsens: Nusquam gentium; vivere vitam: servire servitutem; Quid mihi Celsus agit? Fac me ut sciam, &c. Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo, Ter. Suo sibi succo vivunt, Plaut:

When a conjunction is used apparently redundant, it is called **POLYSYNDETON**; as, *Una Eurufque Notufque ruunt*, Virg.

When that which is in reality one, is so expreffed as if there were two, it is called **HENDIADYS**; as, *Pateris libamus et auro*, *for aureis pateris*, Virg.

When feveral words are ufed to exprefs one thing, it is called **PERIPHRAIS**; as, *Urbs Trojæ*, *for Troja*, Virg. *Res voluptatum*, *for voluptates*, Plaut. *Ufus purpurarum*, *for purpura*; *Genus pifcium*, *for pifces*, Hor.

3. HYPERBATON.

HYPERBATON is the transgreffion of that order or arrangement of words which is commonly ufed in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various forts into which it is divided, are, **Anaſtrôphe**, **Hystéron proteron**, **Hypallâge**, **Synchêſis**, **Tmeſis**, and **Parenthêſis**.

1. **ANASTRÔPHE** is the inverſion of words, or the placing of that word laſt which ſhould be firſt; as, *Italiam contra*; *His accenſa ſuper*; *Spemque metumque inter dubii*; *for contra Italiam, ſuper his, inter ſpem, &c.* Virg. *Ferram ſol facit are*, *for arefacit*, Lucret.

2. **HYSTÉRON PROTERON** is when that is put in the former part of the ſentence, which, according to the ſenſe, ſhould be in the latter; as, *Valet atque vivit*, *for vivit atque valet*, Ter.

3. **HYPALLAGE** is the exchanging of caſes; as, *Dare claſſibus auſtros*, *for dare claſſes auſtris*, Virg.

4. **SYNCHESIS** is a confuſed and intricate arrangement of words; as, *Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus aras*; *for Quæ ſaxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant aras*, Virg.

5. **TMEſIS** is the diviſion of a compound word, and the interpoſing of other words betwixt its parts; as, *Septem ſubjecta trioni gens*, *for Septentrioni*, Virg. *Quæ meo cunque animo libitum eſt facere*, *for quæcunque*, Ter.

6. **PARENTHESIS** is the inserting of a member into the body of a ſentence, which is neither neceſſary to the ſenſe, nor at all affects the conſtruction; as, *Tityre, dum redeo*, (*brevis eſt via*) *paſce capellas*, Virg.

III. ANALYSIS AND TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of tranſlating either from Engliſh into Latin, or from Latin into Engliſh, ariſes in a great meaſure from the different arrangement of words which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus, in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*; and in each of these the sense is equally obvious: but in English we can only say, *Alexander conquered Darius*. This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd, Milton*. Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you. But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given, is to imitate the CLASSICS.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorical*.

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another, according to the natural order of syntax.

Artificial or *Oratorical* order is when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking, or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order therefore to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analysis* or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However to a beginner the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or shew its dependence on what went before; *next*, the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence: supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up; as,

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptisque lætabere, Cic. Off. lib. 3.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear unto me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences: 1. *Igitur, mi (fili) Cicero, (tu) vale,* 2. *et (tu) persuade tibi (ipſi) te eſſe quidem (filium) cariffimum mihi:* 3. *ſed (tu) persuade tibi ipſi te) fore (filium) cariorẽ (mihi in) multo (negotio)* 4. *ſi (tu) latere talibus monumentis,* 5. *et (ſi tu lætabere talibus) præceptis.*

1. Fare (you) well then, my (ſon) Cicero, 2. and assure (you) yourself that you are indeed (a ſon) very dear to me; 3. but (aſſure you yourſelf that you) ſhall be (a ſon) much dearer (to me) 4. if you ſhall take delight in ſuch writings, 5. and (if you ſhall take delight in ſuch) instructions.

When a learner firſt begins to tranſlate from the Latin, he ſhould keep as ſtrictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made farther progreſs, ſomething more will be requiſite. He ſhould then be accuſtomed, as much as poſſible, to tranſuſe the beauties of an author, from the one language into the other. For this purpoſe it will be neceſſary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but alſo with the different kinds of ſtyle adapted to different ſorts of compoſition, and to different ſubjects; together with the various turns of thought and expreſſion which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought; or the *Figures of Rhetoric*.

The QUANTITY of SYLLABLES.

The quantity of a ſyllable is the ſpace of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of Syllables, and of the meaſures of Verſe, is called *PROSODY*.

Syllables, with reſpect to their quantity, are either *long* or *ſhort*.

A long ſyllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a ſhort; as, *tēdēre*.

Some ſyllables are *common*: that is, ſometimes long, and ſometimes ſhort; as the ſecond ſyllable in *volucris*.

A vowel is ſaid to be long or ſhort by nature, which is always ſo by cuſtom, or by the uſe of the poets.

In polyſyllables or long words, the laſt ſyllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*, and the laſt ſyllable except two, the *Antepenultima*.

When the quantity of a ſyllable is not fixed by ſome particular rule, it is ſaid to be long or ſhort by *authority*, that is, according to the uſage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lægo* is ſaid to be ſhort by authority, becauſe it is always made ſhort by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lĕgo* and *lĕgi* seem to be sounded equally long; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious; thus, *perlĕgo*, *perlĕgi*; *relĕgo*, -ĕre; *relĕgo*, -āre, &c.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

1. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *Mĕus*, *alius*; so *nĭbĭl*; *b* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *crĕate*, *bĕhave*.

Exc. 1. *I* is long in *fĭo*, *fĭbam*, &c. unless when followed by *r*; as, *fĭrĭ*, *fĭrem*; thus,

Omnia jam fient, fĭrĭ quæ posse negabam, Ovid.

Exc. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long; as, *speciĕi*. So is the first syllable in *ĕer*, *dĭus*, *ĕbeu*, and the penultima in *aulai*, *terrāi*, &c. in *Pompĕi*, *Cai*, and such like words; but we sometimes find *Pompĕi* in two syllables, Hor. II. Od. 7.

Exc. 3. The first syllable in *obe* and *Diana* is common; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, *illius*, *unius*, &c. to be read long in prose. *Alius*, in the genitive is always long; *alterius* short.

In Greek words when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

Sometimes it is short; as, *Danĕ*, *Idĕa*, *Sophĭa*, *Symphonia*, *Simois*, *Hĭades*, *Phĕon*, *Deucaliĕon*, *Pygmalĕon*, *Thebĕis*, &c.

Often it is long; as, *Lycĕon*, *Machĕon*, *Didymĕon*; *Amphĕon*, *Arĕon*, *Ixiĕon*, *Pandĕon*; *Nĕis*, *Lĕis*, *Achĕi*; *Brisĕis*, *Cadmĕis*; *Latĕus*, & *Latĕis*, *Myrtĕus*, *Nerĕus*, *Priamĕus*; *Achelĕus*, *Minĕus*; *Archelĕus*, *Menclĕus*, *Amphiarĕus*; *Ēnĕas*, *Penĕus*, *Epĕus*, *Acrifĕonĕus*, *Adamantĕus*, *Phœbĕus*, *Gigantĕus*; *Dariĕus*, *Basiliĕus*, *Eugerĕus*, *Bacchĕus*; *Cassiopĕa*, *Cæsarĕa*, *Chæronĕa*, *Cytherĕa*, *Galatĕa*, *Laodicĕa*, *Medĕa*, *Panthĕa*, *Penelopĕa*; *Cĕio*, *Enĕo*, *Elegĕia*, *Iphigerĕia*, *Alexandria*, *Thalia*, *Antiochia*, *idololatria*, *litanĕa*, *politĕa*, &c. *Lĕertes*, *Dĕiphobus*, *Dejanĕra*, *Trĕes*, *herĕes*, &c.

Sometimes it is common; as, *Chorea*, *platea*, *Malea*, *Nerĕides*, *canopeum*, *Orion*, *Geryon*, *Eos*, *cĕus*, &c. So in foreign words, *Michaĕl*, *Israĕl*, *Raphaĕl*, *Abraham*, &c.

The accusative of nouns in *eus* is usually short; as, *Orphĕa*, *Salmonĕa*, *Capharĕa*, &c. but sometimes long; as, *Idomenĕa*, *Ilionĕa*, *Virg. Instead of Elegĕia*, *Cytherĕa*, we find *Elegĕia*, *Cythĕrcĕa*, Ovid. But

the quantity of Greek words cannot be properly understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened ; as, *science, idæa*.

2. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant, is long, (*by position, as it is called ;*) as,

arma, fállo, áxis, gāza, mājor; the compounds of *jugum* excepted ; as, *bījūgus, quadrijūgus, &c.*

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position ; as,

Ferte citi flammās, date velā, scandite muros, Virg.
But this rarely occurs.

¶ A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common ; as the middle syllable in *volucris, tenebræ*, thus,

Et primò similis volūcri, mox vera volūcri, Ovid.
Nox tenēbras profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenēbras, Id.

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro, pharetra, podagra, chiragra, celbris, latebræ, &c.*

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. The vowel must be naturally short, the mute must go before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. Thus, *a* in *pater* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom : but *a* in *matris, acris*, is always long, because long by nature or custom in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salūbris, ambulācrum*, is always long ; because they are derived from *salus, salūtis*, and *ambulātum*. So *a* in *arte, abluo, &c.* is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

L and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words ; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

3. A contracted syllable is long ; as,

Nil, for nihil ; mī, for mihi ; cōgo, for cōgō ; alius, for aliius ; tibicen, for tibiicen ; iit, for iit ; sōdes, for si audes : nōlo, for non volo ; bigæ, for bijūgæ, &c.

4. A diphthong is always long ; as,

Aurum, Cæsar, Eubæa, &c. Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short ; as, *præire, præustus* ; thus,

Nec totā tamen ille prior præunte carinā. Virg.
Stipitibus duris agitur sudibusque præustis. Id.

But it is sometimes lengthened ; as,

———— cum vācuus domino præiret Arion. Statius.

In English we pronounce several of the diphthongs short, by sinking the sound of one vowel ; but then there is properly no diphthong.

SPECIAL RULES.

Concerning the FIRST and MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

Preterites and Supines of two Syllables.

5. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vēni, vīdi, vīci*.

Except bībi, scīdi, from scindo, fīdi from findo, tūli, dēdi, sēti.

6. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vīsum, cāsum, mōtum*.

Except sātum, from sēro; cītum, from cieo; lītum, from līno; sītum, from sīno; flātum, from flō; ītum, from eo; dātum, from do; rātum, from the compounds of ruo; quītum, from queo; rātus, from reor.

Preterites doubled.

7. Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short; as,

Cēcīdi, tētīgi, pēpūli, pēpēri, dēdīci, tūtūdi: except cēcīdi, from cādo; pēpēdi, from pēdo; and when two consonants intervene; as, sēcēlli, tētēndi, &c.

INCREASE OF NOUNS.

A noun is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative; as, *rex, regis*. Here *re* is called the *increase* or *crement*, and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a crement.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one; as, *iter, itinēris*.

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular; as, *gener, generis, generōrum*.

Nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions, do not increase in the singular number, unless where one vowel comes before another; as, *fructus, fructū; rex, rēi*; which fall under Rule 1.

Third Declension.

8. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long; *e, i*, and *u* short; as, *Pietātis, honōris; muliēris, lapīdis, murmuris*.

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

A.

A noun in A shortens *ātis* in the genitive ; as, *dogma*, -ātis, *poema*, -ātis.

O.

O shortens *īnis*, but lengthens *ēnis* and *ōnis* ; as, *Cardo*, -īnis ; *Virgo*, -īnis ; *Anio*, -ēnis ; *Cicero*, -ōnis. Gentile or patritial nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive ; as, *Macēdo*, -ōnis ; *Saxo*, -ōnis : Some are long ; as, *Surffōnes*, *Vettōnes*. *Brittones*, is common.

I. C. D.

I shortens *ītis* ; as, *Hydromēli*, -ītis. *Es* lengthens -*ēis* ; as, *Halec*, -ēis.

A noun in D shortens the ccrement ; as, *David*, -īdis.

L.

Masculines in AL shorten *ālis* ; as, *Sat*, *sālis* ; *Hannibal*, -ālis ; *Hasdrubal*, -ālis ; but neuters lengthen it ; as, *animal*, -ālis.

Sōlis from *sol* is long ; also Hebrew words in *el* ; as, *Michael*, -ēlis. Other nouns in l shorten the ccrement ; as, *Vigil*, -īlis ; *consul*, -ūlis.

N.

Nouns in ON vary the ccrement. Some lengthen it ; as, *Helicor*, -ōnis ; *Chiron*, -ōnis. Some shorten it ; as, *Memnon*, -ēnis ; *Aëleon*, -ēnis.

EN shortens *īnis* ; as, *furnen*, -īnis ; *tibicen*, -īnis. Other nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN *anis* ; as, *Titan*, -ānis : EN *ēnis* ; as, *Siren*, -ēnis : IN *īnis* ; as, *delphin*, -īnis : YN *īnis* ; as, *Phorcyn*, -īnis.

R.

1. Neuters in AR lengthen *aris* ; as, *calcar*, -āris. Except the following, *bacchar*, -āris ; *jubar*, -āris ; *nectar*, -āris : Also the adjective *par*, -pāris, and its compounds, *impar*, -āris ; *dispar*, -āris, &c.

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive, *Nar*, *Nāris*, the name of a river ; *fur*, *fūris* ; *ver*, *vēris* : Also *Recimer*, -ēris ; *Byzer*, -ēris ; *Ser*, *Sēris* ; *Iber*, -ēris, proper names.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen *teris* ; as, *crater*, -ēris ; *character*, -ēris. Except *æther*, -ēris.

4. OR lengthens *oris* ; as, *amor*, -ōris. Except neuter nouns ; as, *marmor*, -ōris ; *æquor*, -ōris : Greek nouns in tor ; as, *Hector*, -ōris ; *Actor*, -ōris ; *rhetor*, -ōris : Also *arbor*, -ōris ; and *memor*, -ōris.

5. Other nouns in R shorten the genitive ; AR *aris*, *mafc.* ; as, *Cæsar*, -āris ; *Hamilcar*, -āris ; *lar*, *lāris*.

T

ER *eris* of any gender ; as, *aer*, *aëris* ; *mulier*, *-ëris* ; *cadāver*, *-ëris* ; *iter*, anciently *iūner*, *itinëris* ; *verbëris*, from the obsolete *verber*. UR *uris* ; as, *vultur*, *-ūris* ; *murmur*, *-ūris*. YR *yris* ; as, *Martyr*, *-ÿris*.

A S.

1. Nouns in AS which have *atis*, lengthen the crement ; as, *pietas*, *-ātis* ; *Mecēnas*, *-ātis*. Except *anas*, *-ātis*.

2. Other nouns in AS shorten the crement ; as, Greek nouns in *adis*, *ātis*, and *ānis* ; thus, *Pallas*, *-ādīs* ; *artocreas*, *-cātis* ; *Melas*, *ānis*, the name of a river. So *vas*, *vādis* ; *mar*, *māris* : But *vas*, *vāsis*, is long.

E S.

ES shortens the crement ; as, *miles*, *-īs* ; *Ceres*, *-ëris* ; *pes*, *pēdis*.

Except *locuples*, *-ētis* ; *quies*, *-ētis* ; *mansues*, *-ētis*, *heres*, *-ēdis* ; *merces*, *-ēdis*.

I S.

Nouns in IS shorten the crement ; as, *lapis*, *-īdis* ; *Sanguis*, *-īnis* ; *Phyllis*, *-īdis*.

Except *Glis*, *glīs* ; and Latin nouns which have *itis* ; as, *lis*, *lītis* ; *dis*, *dītis* ; *Quiris*, *-ītis* ; *Samnis*, *-ītis* : But *Charis*, a Greek noun, has *Charītis*.

The following also lengthen the crement : *Crenis*, *-īdis* ; *Pfopbis*, *-īdis* ; *Nefis*, *-īdis*, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have also *in* ; as, *Salūmis*, or *-in*, *Salāmīnis*.

O S.

Nouns in OS lengthen the crement ; as, *nepos*, *-ōtis* ; *flos*, *flōris*.

Except *Bos*, *bōvis* ; *compos*, *-ōtis* ; *impos*, *-ōtis*.

U S.

US shortens the crement ; as, *tempus*, *-ōris* ; *tripus*, *-ōdis*.

Except nouns which have *ūdis*, *ūris*, and *ūtis* ; as, *incus*, *ūdis* ; *jus*, *jūris* ; *salus*, *-ūtis*. But *Ligus* has *Ligūris* ; the obsolete *pecus*, *pecūdis* ; and *intercus*, *-ūtis*.

The neuter of the comparative has *ōris* ; as, *melius*, *-ōris*.

Y S.

YS shortens *ydis* or *ydos* ; as, *chlamys*, *-ÿdis*, or *-ÿdos* ; and lengthens *ynis* ; as, *Trachys*, *-ÿnis*.

BS. PS. MS.

Nouns in S with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as, *cælebs*, -ībis; *inops*, -ōpis; *hiems*, -ēm̄is.

Except *Cyclops*, -ōpis; *seps*, -sēpis; *gryps*, grȳphis; *Cercops*, -ōpis; *plebs*, plēbis; *hydrops*, -ōpis.

T.

T shortens the crement; as, *caput*, -ītis.

X.

1. Nouns in X which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the crement; as, *conjux*, -ūgis; *remex*, -īgis; *Allobrox*, -ōgis; *Phryx*, *Phrygis*. But *lex*, *lēgis*; and *rex*, *rēgis*, are long; and likewise *frūgis*.

2. EX shortens *icis*; as, *vertex*, -īcis; except *vibex*, -īcis.

3. Other nouns in X lengthen the crement; as, *pax*, *pācis*; *radix*, -īcis; *vox*, *vōcis*; *lux*, *lūcis*; *Pollux*, -ūcis, &c.

Except *fācis*, *nēcis*, *vīcis*, *prēcis*, *calicis*, *cilicis*, *pīcis*, *fornicis*, *nīvis*, *Capadōcis*, *dūcis*, *nūcis*, *crūcis*, *trūcis*, *onychis*, *Erȳcis*, *maſtyx*, -ȳchis, the root of the *lentiscus*, or *maſſich-tree*, and many others, whose quantity can only be ascertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement; as, *Syphax*, -ācis, or -ācis; *Sandyn*, -īcis, or -īcis; *Bebryx*, -ȳcis, or -ȳcis.

Increase of the Plural Number.

9 Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A*, *E*, and *O*, long; but shorten *I*, and *U*; as, *musarum*, *rērum*, *dominōrum*; *rēgibus*, *portūbus*: except *bōbus* or *būbus*, contracted for *bōvibus*.

INCREASE OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active; as, *amas*, *amāmus*, where the second syllable *ma* is the increase or crement; for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables; as, *amas*, *amābāmini*; in which case it is said to have a *first*, *second*, or *third* increase.

10. In the increase of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o* are long; *i*, and *u*, short; as,

Amāre, *docēre*, *amātōte*; *legimus*, *sūmus*, *volūmus*.

The poets sometimes shorten *dēderunt* and *stēderunt*; and lengthen *rimus* and *ritus*, in the future of the subjunctive; as, — *transferētis equas*, Ovid. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

The first or middle syllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority*; and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

REMARKS ON the QUANTITY of the PENULT of WORDS.

1. Patronymics in IDES or ADES usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamides*, *Atlantiades*, &c. Unless they come from nouns in *us*; as, *Pelides*, *Tyides*, &c.

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in AIS, EIS, ITIS, OIS, OTIS, INE, and ONE, commonly lengthen the penult; as, *Achais*, *Ptolemais*, *Chryseis*, *Æneis*, *Memphitis*, *Latōis*, *Icariotis*, *Nerine*, *Aristonæ*. Except *Thebais*, and *Phocais*; and *Nereis*, which is common.

3. Adjectives in ACUS, ICUS, IDUS, and IMUS, for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiacus*, *academicus*, *lepīdus*, *legitimus*; also superlatives; as, *fortissimus*, &c. Except *opacus*, *amicus*, *apricus*, *pudicus*, *mendicus*, *posticus*, *fidus*, *infidus*, (but *perfidus*, of *per* and *fides*, is short,) *bimus*, *quadrimus*, *patrimus*, *matrimus*, *opinus*; and two superlatives, *imus*, *primus*.

4. Adjectives in ALIS, ANUS, ARUS, IVUS, ORUS, OSUS, lengthen the penult; as, *dotalis*, *urbanus*, *avarus*, *effivus*, *decorus*, *arenosus*. Except *barbarus*, *opiparus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in ILIS shorten the penult; as, *agilis*, *facilis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anilis*, *civilis*, *berilis*, &c. To these add, *exilis*, *subilis*; and names of months, *Aprilis*, *Quintilis*, *Septilis*: Except *humilis*, *parilis*; and also *familis*. But all adjectives in *atilis* are short; as, *versatilis*, *volatilis*, *umbra-tilis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in INUS derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c. also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, *amaracinus*, *crocinus*, *cedrinus*, *faginus*, *oleaginus*; *adamantinus*, *crystallinus*, *crastinus*, *pristinus*, *perendinus*, &c.

Other adjectives in INUS are long; as, *agnatus*, *austrius*, *bivus*, *clandestinus*, *Latinus*, *marinus*, *supinus*, *vespertinus*, &c.

7. Diminutives in OLUS, OLA, OLUM; and ULUS, ULA, ULUM, always shorten the penult; as, *urceolus*, *siliola*, *musculum*; *testiculus*, *ratuncula*, *corculum*, &c.

8. Adverbs in TIM lengthen the penult; as, *oppidatim*, *viritim*, *tributum*. Except *affatim*, *perpetim*, and *statim*.

9. Desideratives in URIO shorten the antepenultima, which in the second and third person is the penult; as, *esurio*, *esuris*, *esurit*. But other verbs in *urio*, lengthen that syllable; as, *ligurio*, *liguris*; *scaturio*, *scaturis*, &c.

PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

The following proper names lengthen the penult. Ab-
dāra, Abȳdus, Adōnis, Æsōpus, Ætōlus, Ahāla, Alaricus,
Alcīdes, Amȳclæ, Andronīcus, Anūbis, Archimēdes, Ari-
arāthes, Ariobarzānes, Aristīdes, Aristobūlus, Aristogiton,
Arpīnum, Artabānus; Brachmānes, Busiris, Buthrōtus;
Cēthēgus, Chalcēdon, Cleobūlus, Cyrēne, Cythēra, Cu-
rētes; Dariēi, Demonīcus, Diomēdes, Diōres, Dioscūri;
Ebūdes, Eriphȳle, Eubūlus, Euclīdes, Euphrātes, Eumē-
des, Eurīpus, Euxīnus; Gargānus, Gætūlus, Granīcus;
Heliogabūlus, Henrīcus, Heraclīdes, Heraclītus, Hippō-
nax, Hīspānus; Irēne; Lacȳdas, Latōna, Leucāta; Lug-
dūnum, Lycōras; Mandāne, Mausōlus, Maximīnus, Me-
leāger, Melsāla, Melsāna, Milētus; Nasīca, Nicānor, Ni-
cētas; Pachȳnus, Pandōra, Pelōris, et -us, Pharsālus,
Phoenīce, Polītes, Polyclētus, Polynīces, Priāpus; Sarpē-
don, Serāpis, Sinōpe, Stratonīce, Suffētēs; Tigrānes,
Thessalonīca, Verōna, Veronīca.

The following are short; Amāthus, Amphipōlis, Ana-
bāsis, Anticȳra, Antigōnus, et -nē, Anilōchus, Antiōchus,
Antiōpa, Antīpas, Antipāter, Antiphānes, Antiphātes, An-
tiphīla, Antīphon, Anȳtus, Apūlus, Areopāgus, Arinū-
num, Armēnus, Athēsis, Attālus, Attīca; Bitūrix, Bruc-
tēri; Calāber, Callicrātes, Callistrātus, Candāce, Cantāber,
Carneādes, Cherīlus, Chrysolītōmus, Cleombrōtus, Cleomē-
nes, Corȳcos, Constantinopōlis, Cratērus, Cratȳlus, Cre-
mēra, Crustumēri, Cybēle, Cyclādes, Cyziēus; Damōcles,
Dardānus, Dejōces, Deiotārus, Democrītus, Demīpho,
Didȳmus, Diogēnes, Drepānum, Dumnōrix; Empedōcles,
Ephēsus, Evergētes, Eumēnes, Eurymēdon, Euripȳlus;
Fucīnus; Geryōnes, Gyārus; Hecyra, Heliopōlis, Her-
miōne, Herodōtus, Hesīōdus, Hesīōne, Hippocrātes, Hip-
potāmos, Hypāta, Hypānis; Icārus, Icētas, Illȳris, Iphītus,
Ismārus, Ithāca; Laodīce, Laomēdon, Lampsācus, La-
mȳrus, Lapīthæ, Leucretīlis, Lipāre, v. -a, Lyfimāchus,
Longimānus; Marāthon, Mænālus, Marmarīca, Massa-
gētæ, Matrōna, Megara, Mēlītus, et -ta, Metropōlis, Mu-
tīna, Mycōnus; Neōcles, Nerītos, Norīcum; Omphale;
Patara, Pegāsus, Pharnaces, Pisistratus, Polydamas, Polyx-

ěna, Porsěna, or Poršenna, Praxitěles, Puteōli, Pylades, Pythagōras; Sarmātz, Sarsina, Seměle, Semirāmis, Sequāni, et -a, Serīphos, Sicōris, Socrātes, Sodōma, Sotādes, Spartācus, Sporādes, Strongyle, Stymphālus, Sybāris; Taygēus, Telegōnus, Telemāchus, Tenēdos, Tarrāco, Theophōnes, Theophīlus, Tomýris; Urbicus; Venēti, Vologēsus, Volūsus; Xenocrātes; Zoīlus. Zopyrus.

The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batāvi*, Lucan. *Batāvi*, Juv. et Mart. *Fortuitus*, Horat. *Fortuitus*, Mart. Some make *fortuitus*, of three syllables; but it may be shortened like *gratuitus*, Stat. *Patrimus*, *matrimus*, *praefoler*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity there is no certain authority.

2. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A.

11. *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short; as, *Musā* *templā*, *Tydā*, *Dampādā*.

Exc. The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musā*, *Enēā*; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*; as, *O Enēā*, *O Pallā*.

A in the end of a word not declined by cases is long; as, *Amā*, *frustrā*, *pratereā*, *ergā*, *intrā*.

Exc. *Itā*, *quā*, *cjā*, *postcā*, *putā*, (adv.) and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contrā*, *ultrā*; and the compounds of *ginta*; as, *trigintā*, &c.

E.

12. *E* final is short; as, *Natē*, *scdile*, *patrē*, *currē*, *nempē*, *antē*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, *mē*, *tē*, *sē*: except these enclitic conjunctions, *quē*, *vē*, *nē*; and these syllabical adjections, *prē*, *cē*, *tē*; as, *suaptē*, *hujuscē*, *tutē*.

Exc. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declension are long; as, *Calliōpē*, *Anchisē*, *fidē*. So *rē*; and *diē*, with their compounds, *quarē*, *hodiē*, *pridiē*, *postridiē*, *quotidiē*: Also Greek nouns which want the singular; *Cetē*, *melē*, *Tempē*; and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation; as, *Docē*, *manē*; but *cave*, *vale*, and *vide*, are sometimes short.

Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long; as, *placidē*, *pulchrē*, *valdē*, contracted for *validē*: To these add *fermē*, *ferē*, and *obē*; also all adverbs of the superlative degree; as, *duclissimē*, *fortissimē*: But *benē* and *malē* are short.

I.

13. *I* final is long; as, *Dominī*, *patrī*, *docerī*.

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are short; as, *Alexā*, *Amaryllī*.

Exc. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension which increase, is common; as, *Pallādi, Minoīdi*.

Mibi, tibi, sibi, are also common: So likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi*; and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which in poetry is seldom the case. *Sicubi* and *necubi* are always short.

O.

14. O final is common; as, *Vergo, amo, quando*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, *ō, dō, fō, prō*: The dative and ablative sing. of the second declension is long; as, *librō dominō*: Also Greek nouns; as, *Didō*, and *Athō* the genit. of *Athos*: and adverbs derived from nouns; as, *certō, falsō, paulō*. To these add *quō, cō*, and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō*; likewise *illō, idcirco, citrō, intrō, retrō, ultrō*.

Exc. 2. The following words are short; *Egō, sciō, cedō* a defective verb, *homō, citō, illicō, immō, duō, ambō, modō*, with its compounds, *quomodō, dummodō, postmodō*: but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 3. The gerund in DO in Virgil is long; in other poets it is short. *Ergō*, on account of, is long; *ergo*, therefore, is doubtful.

U and Y.

15. U final is long; Y final is short; as, *Vultū: Molj*.

B, D, L, M, R, T.

16. B, D, L, R, and T, in the end of a word, are short; as,

Ab, apud, semel, precor, caput.

The following words are long, *sāl, sōl, nīl; pār* and its compounds; *fār, lār, Nār, cūr, fūr*; also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Cratēr, vēr, Ibēr*, likewise *aēr, athēr*: to which add Hebrew names; as, *Jōb, Daniēl, David*.

M final anciently made the foregoing vowel short; as, *Militūm oēs*, Ennius. But by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, *milit' oēs*; except in compound words; as, *circūmagō, circūmeo*.

C, N.

17. C and N, in the end of a word, are long; as,

Ac, sic, nōn. So Greek nouns in *n*; as, *Titān, Sirēn, Salamīn*; *Æneān, Anchisēn, Circēn*; *Lacedæmōn, &c.*

The following words are short, *nēc* and *donēc*; *forstān, in, forsān, tamēn, ān, vidēn*; likewise nouns in *en* which have *inis* in the genitive; as, *carmēn, crimēn*; together with several Greek nouns; as, *Ilīōn, Pylōn, Alexīn.*

The pronoun *hic* and the verb *fac* are common.

AS, ES, OS.

18. *AS, ES, and OS*, in the end of a word, are long; as, *Mās, quiēs, bonōs.*

The following words are short, *anās, ěs*, from *sum*, and *penēs*; *ōs* having *offis* in the genitive, *compōs*, and *impōs*; also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations; as, *Arcās, and Arcādās, herōds, Phrygēs, Arcadōs, Tenēdōs, Mēlos, &c.* and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult of the genitive increasing short; as, *Alēs, hebēs, obsēs.* But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs*, and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

IS, US, YS.

19. *IS, US, and YS*, in the end of a word, are short; as, *Turrīs, legīs, legīmūs, annūs, Capjīs.*

Exc. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long; as, *Pennīs, librīs, nobīs, omnis* for *omnes*, *fructūs, manūs*; also the genitive singular of the fourth declension; as, *portūs.* But *bus* in the dat. and abl. plur. is short; as, *floribūs, fructibūs, rebūs.*

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *itis, inis*, or *entis*; as, *līs, Samnīs, Salamīs, Simōis*; To these add the adverbs *grātis* and *forīs*; the noun *glīs*, and *vīs*, whether it be a noun or a verb; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has *itis*; as, *audīs, abīs, posīs.* *Ris* in the future of the subjunctive is common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long; as, *grūs, sūs*; also nouns which in the genitive have *ūris, ūdis, ūtis, un-*

tis, or *ōdis* ; as, *tellūs*, *incūs*, *virtūs*, *amāthūs*, *tripūs*. To these add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension ; as, *Clīūs*, *Sapphūs*, *Mantūs* ; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative ; as, *Panthūs*.

Exc. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative ; as, *Phorcys*, *Trachys*.

The last syllable of every verse is common : Or, as some think, necessarily long, on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

The QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE and COMPOUND words.

Derivatives.

20. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives ; as,

Amicus, <i>from</i>	āmo.	Decōro, <i>from</i>	decus, -ōris
Auctiōnor,	auctio, -ōnis.	Exūlo,	exul, -ūlis.
Auctōro,	auctor, -ōris.	Pāvidus,	pāveo.
Auditor,	audītum.	Quirito,	Quiris, -itis.
Auspīcor,	auspex, -icis.	Radīcitus,	radix, -icis.
Caupōnor,	caupo, -ōnis.	Sospīto,	sospes, -itis.
Compētitor,	compētītum.	Nātura,	nātus.
Cornīcor,	cornix, -icis.	Māternus,	māter.
Custōdio,	custos, -ōdis.	Lēgebam, &c.	lēgo.
Devōrus,	decor, -ōris.	Lēgeram, &c.	legi.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Long from short.

Dēni, <i>from</i>	dēcem.	Suspīcio, <i>from</i>	suspīcor.	Mōbīlis, <i>from</i>	mōveo.
Fōmes,	fōveo.	Sēdes,	sēdco.	Hūmor,	hūmus.
Hūmanus,	hōmo.	Sēcūs,	sēcus.	Jūmentum,	jūvo, &c.
Rēguls,	rēgo.	Rēnuria,	pēnus.		

2. Short from long.

Arena and ārista, <i>from</i>	āreo.	Lūcerna, <i>from</i>	lūcco.
Nōta, and nōto,	nōtus.	Dux, -ūcis,	dūco.
Vādum,	vādo.	Stābilis,	stābam.
Fides,	fido.	Ditio,	dis, dītis.
Sōpor,	sōpio.	Quāfillus,	quālus, &c.

Compounds.

21. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them ; as,

Dēduco, of *dē* and *dūco*. So, *prōfēro*, *antēfēro*, *consōlor*, *dēnōto*, *dēpecūlor*, *deprāvo*, *despēro*, *despūmo*, *desquāmo*, *enōdo*, *ērūdio*, *exūdo*, *exāro*, *expāveo*, *incēro*, *inhūmo*, *investigo*, *pragrāvo*, *pranāto*, *rēgēlo*, *appāro*, *appāreo*, *concedāvus*, *pregrāvis*, *dēsōlo*, *suffōco*, *diffidit* from *diffindo*, and *diffidit* from *diffido*, *indico* and *indico*, *permānet* from *permāneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno*, *effōdit* in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect ; so *exēdit*, and *exēdit* ; *devēnit* and *devēnit* ; *devēnimus* and *devēnimus* ; *reperi-mus* and *reperi-mus* ; *effūgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity ; as, *incīdo* from *in* and *cādo* ; *incīdo*, from *in* and *cādo*, *suffōco*, from *sub* and *faux*, *faucis*. Unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule ; as, *ādmitto*, *pērcello*, *dēosculor*, *prōhibeo*.

Exc. 1. *Agnitum*, *cognitum*, *dējēro*, *pējēro*, *innūba*, *pronūba*, *maledīcus*, *veridīcus*, *nihīlum*, *femisōpītus* ; from *nōtus*, *jūro*, *nūbo*, *dīco*, *hīlum*, and *sōpio* : *ambī-tus*, a participle from *ambio*, is long ; but the substantives *ambītus* and *ambītio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

Exc. 2. The preposition *PRO* is short in the following words : *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prōfūgus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōneptis*, *prōfestus*, *prōfari*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfanus*, *prōfecto*, *prōcella*, *prōtervus*, and *prōpāgo*, a lineage ; *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine-stock or shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful : *propago*, to propagate ; *propino*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *procūro*, and *Proserpina*.

Exc. 3. The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long ; as, *sēpāro*, *divello* : except *dīrimo*, *dīsertus*. *Re*

is short ; *as*, *rēmitto*, *rēfēro* : except in the impersonal verb *rēfert*, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

Exc. 4. *E*, *I*, and *O*, in the end of the former compounding word are usually shortened ; *as*, *nēfas*, *nēque*, *patēfacio*, &c. *omnipotens*, *agrīcōla*, *signīfīco*, &c. *duōdēcim*, *hōdie*, *sacrōsanctus*, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases ; *as*, *quīdam*, *quīvis*, *tantīdem*, *eīdem*, &c. And when the compounding words may be taken separately ; *as*, *ludīmagīster*, *lucrīfacio*, *sīquis*, &c. *Idem* in the masc. is long, in the neuter short ; *also* *ubīque*, *ibīdem*. But in *ubīvis*, and *ubicunque*, the *i* is doubtful.

ACCENT.

Accent is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced.

In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is sounded higher than the rest, to prevent monotony, or an uniformity of sound, which is disagreeable to the ear.

When accent is considered with respect to the sense, or when a particular stress is laid upon any word, on account of the meaning, it is called *Emphāsis*.

There are three accents, distinguished by their different sounds ; *acute*, *grave*, and *circumflex*.

1. The *acute* or *sharp* accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked ['] ; *as*, *prófero*, *prófer*.

2. The *grave* or *base* accent depresses the voice, or keeps it in its natural tone ; and is thus marked [`] ; *as*, *doctē*. This accent properly belongs to all syllables which have no other.

3. The *circumflex* accent first raises, and then sinks the voice in some degree on the same syllable ; and is therefore placed only upon long syllables. When written, it has this mark, made up of the two former [^] ; *as*, *amá-
re*.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used.

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction; as in these adverbs, *aliquò, continuò, dècè, mē, &c.* to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelt in the same way. So *poētā, gloriā*, in the ablative: *fructū, tumultū*, in the genitive: *nostrū, vestrū*, the genitive of *nos* and *vos*: *ergò*, on account of: *occidit*, he slew; *Pompiliū*, for *Pompilius*; *amariū*, for *amarius*, &c.

VERSE.

A VERSE is a certain number of long and short syllables disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always turn back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure, than to regulate its pronunciation.

FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cesura*, which is commonly a long syllable.

1. Feet of two syllables.

Spondeeus, consists of two long; as, *omnēs*.

Pyrrhichius, two short; as, *dēs*.

Iambus, a short and a long; as, *amāns*.

Trocheus, a long and a short; as, *servus*.

2. Feet of three syllables.

Dactylus, a long and two short; as, *scribēre*.

Anapaestus, two short and a long; as, *pictar*.

Amphimacer, a long, a short, and a long; as, *charitās*.

Tribrachys, three short; as, *dōmīnūs*.

The following are not so much used.

Molossus, dēlectant.

Amphibrachys, hōnōrē.

Bacchius, dōlōrēs.

Antibacchius, pēlluntūr.

Dispendeus,

Dijambus,

Choriambus,

Ditrocheus,

Antispastus,

Ionicus minor,

Ionicus major,

ōrātōrēs.

āmōnitās.

pōntificēs.

cāntilēnā.

ālēxāndēr.

prōpērābānt.

cālcārībūs.

3. Feet of four syllables.

Proclitusmaticus, hōmīnībūs.

Pæon primus, tēpōrībūs. *Epitritus primus*, vōlūptātēs.
Pæon secundus, pōtēntiā. *Epitritus secundus*, pœnītentēs.
Pæon tertius, ānīmātūs. *Epitritus tertius*, discōrdiās.
Pæon quartus, cēlērītās. *Epitritus quartus*, fōrtūnātūs.

SCANNING.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*.

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalectic*, or *Acatalecticus*, an *Acatalectic* verse: If a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalectic*; If there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalectic*, or *Hypermeter*.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Descriptio* or *Clausula*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

I. HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees; as,

Lūdēre | *quæ vël-* | *lēm cālā* | *mō pēr* | *mīst ā-* | *grēssī.* *Virg.*
Infān- | *dūm, Rē-* | *gīnā, jū-* | *bēs rēnō-* | *vārē dō-* | *lōrēm.* *Id.*

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondaic*; as,

Cārā Dē- | *ūm sōbō-* | *lēs mū-* | *gnūm Jovīs* | *īncrē-* | *mētūm.* *Virg.*

This verse is used, when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it; so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel; as,

Omniā | *Mērcūrī-* | *ō sīmī-* | *līs vō-* | *cēmquē cō-* | *lōrēmque*
Et flavos crines —

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately; as,

Ludere quæ vellem calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*
Pinguis et ingrata premeretur cascus urbi. *Id.*
 Or which have more dactyles than spondees; as,
Tityre tu patula recubans sub tegmine fagi.

It is esteemed a great beauty in an Hexameter verse, when by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense ; as,

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. Virg.
Illi inter sese magna vi brachia tollunt. Id.

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.
Accipiant inimicum imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt. Id.

But what deserves particular attention in scanning Hexameter verse is the CÆSURA.

Cæsura is, when after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot ; as,

At rē-gīnā grā-vī jā-m-dudum, &c.

The *Cæsura* is variously named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimēris* : When on the fifth half-foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimēris* : When it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hepthemimēris* ; and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Ennemimēris*.

All these different species of the *Cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse ; as,

Illē lā-tūs nŕvŕ-ūm mōl-lī fūl-tūs byā-cīnībū. Virg.

But the most common and beautiful *Cæsura* is the penthemim ; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice in reading an hexameter verse thus composed, whence they call it the *Cæsural pause* ; as,

Tityr dum rede-O, brevis est via, pasce capellas. Virg.

When the *Cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long ; as the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of an hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *Cæsura*. Without this a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose ; as,

Rōma manā terrūit impīgēr Hānnībāl ārmīs. Ennius.

The ancient Romans in pronouncing verse paid a particular attention to its melody. They not only observed the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully ; and the cadence of

the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentameter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees; the third always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth, an anapaustus; as,

Nātū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr sē- | mīnā quīſ- | quē sūx. *Propert.*

Cārminī- | būs vī- | vēs tēm- | pūs īn ōm- | nē mēis. *Ovid.*

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves; the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a Cæsura; the latter, always of two dactyles and another Cæsura: thus,

Nātū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr | sēmīnā | quīſquē sū- | æ.

Cārminī- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpūs īn | ōmnē mē- | īs.

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadēan verse consists of four feet; namely, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mæcē- | nās ātāvis | ēditē rō- | gibūs. *Hor.*

But this verse may be more properly measured thus: In the first place, a spondee; in the second, a dactyle; then a cæsura; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Mæce- | nas ata- | vis | edite | regibus.

4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse has three feet, a spondee, choriambus, and pyrrhichius; as,

Nāvis | quæ tibi crē- | dītūm. *Hor.*

Or it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles; thus,

Navis | quæ- | tibi | creditum.

5. SAPPHIC and ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verse has five feet, viz. a trochee, spondee, dactyle, and two trochees; thus,

Intē- | gēr vī- | tæ, frēlē- | rīſquē | pūrūs. *Hor.*

An Adonian verse consists only of a dactyle and spondee; as,

Jūpītēr | ūrget. *Hor.*

6. PHERECRATIAN.

The Pherecratian verse consists of three feet, a spondee, dactyle, and spondee; thus,

Nigris | æquorā | vētis. *Hor.*

7. PHALÆUCIAN.

The Phalæucian verse consists of five feet, namely, a spondee, a dactyle, and three trochees ; as,

Sūmmām | nēc mētū- | ās dī- | cēm, nēc | ōptēs. Mart.

8. The GREATER ALCAIC.

The greater Alcaic, called likewise *Dactylic*, consists of four feet, a spondee or iambus, iambus and cæsura, then two dactyles ; as,

Virtūs | rēpāl- | sē | nēcīlī | sōrdīdēs. Hor.

9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian iambic verse consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a spondee or iambus ; in the second and fourth, always an iambus ; and in the end, a Cæsura ; as,

Nēc sū- | mīt, aūt | pōnīt | sēcū- | rēs. Hor.

10. The LESSER ALCAIC.

The lesser Dactylic Alcaic consists of four feet, namely, two dactyles and two trochees ; as,

Arbītrī- | ō pōpū- | lārīs | aūrā. Hor.

Of the above kinds of verse, the first two take their names from the number of feet of which they consist. All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named from the feet by which they are most commonly measured ; such as the dactylic, trochaic, anapaestic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

11. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimeter* ; the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimeter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse ; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimeter *quaternarius*, and the trimeter *senarius*.

Originally this kind of verse was purely iambic, *i. e.* admitted of no other feet but the iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Inār- | sīt æ- | stūō | sūs. Hor.

Trimeter, Sūs | ēt ī- | psā Rō- | mā vī- | rībūs | rūit. Id.

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapaustus, and sometimes a tribrachys. We also find a tribrachys in the even places, *i. e.* in the second place, and in the fourth; for the last foot must always be an iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Cānīdī- | ā trā- | ctāvīt | dāpēs. Hor.

Vidē- | rē prōpē- | rāntēs | dōmū. Id.

Trimeter, Quōquō | scēlē- | stī rūī- | tīs aūt | cūr dēx- | tēris. Id.

Pāvīdūm- | quē lēpō- | r' aūt ad | vēnām | lāquēō | grūēm. Id.

Alitī- | būs āt- | quē cānī- | būs hōmī- | cid' Hē- | ctōrēm.

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetrameter*, or *Odonarius*.

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalapha*, *Echklipsis*, *Synarēsis*, *Diarēsis*; *Systole*, and *Diastole*.

1. **SYNALOPHA** is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. Virg.

to be scanned thus,

Cōnticū- | ēr' ōm- | nēs īn- | tēntī- | qu' ōrā tē- | nēbānt.

The *Synalapha* is sometimes neglected; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ō*, *heu*, *ah*, *prob*, *ve*, *vah*, *hei*; as,

O pater, ō hominum, Divūmque aeterna potestas. Virg.

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

U 2

Infulæ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. Virg.
 Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. Id.
 Victor apud rapidum Simoënta sub Ilio alto.
 Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam.
 Glauco et Panopæ, et Inoo Melicertæ.

2. **ECTHLIPSIS** is, when *m* is cut off, with the vowel before it, in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curas hominū! O quantum est in rebus inane? Pers.
 thus,

O cū- | rās hōmī- | n', ō quān- | t' est īn | rēbūs īn- | ānē

Sometimes the *Synalæpha* and *Ecthlipsis* are found at the end of the verse; as,

Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cœlumque
 Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. Virg.
 Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum
 Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. Id.

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspicit*; *r' Ardua*.

3. **SYNÆRESIS** is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis*; as, *Phæthon*, for *Phæthōn*. So *ēi* in *Thesēi*, *Orphei*, *deinde*, *Pompei*; *ūi* in *huic*, *ui*; *ōi* in *proinde*; *ēā* in *aureā*; thus,

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesēi. Ovid.
 Proinde tona eloquio, solitum tibi. Virg.
 Filius huic contrā, torquet qui sidera mundi. Id.
 Aurēā percussū virgā, versumque venenis. Id.

So in *antebac*, *eadem*, *alvearia*, *deest*, *deerit*, *vehemens*, *gnæcit*, *eodem*, *alveo*, *graveolentis*, *omnia*, *semianimis*, *semibomo*, *fluviorum*, *totius*, *promontorium*, &c. as,

Unā eadēque viâ sanguisque animusque ferunter. Virg.
 Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. Id.
 Viliis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. Hor.
 Divitis ubēr agri, Troiæque opulentia deerit. Virg.
 Vehemens et hquidus pureque similissimus anni. Hor.

Te semper anteit dira necessitas. Alcaic. Hor.
 Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. Virg.
 Cum refluit campis, & jam se condidit alveo. Id.
 Inde ubi venere ad fauces graveolentis Averni. Id.
 Bis patriæ cecidere manus: quin protinus omnia. Id.
 Cædit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. Id.
 Semihominis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. Id.
 Fluviorum rex Eridanus, camposque per omnes. Id.
 Magnanimosque duces, totiusque ex ordine gentis. Id.
 Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. Ovid.

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel; as in *genva*, *tennis*; *arjetat*, *tenvia*, *abjete*, *pitvita*; *parjetibus*, *Nasidjenus*; *for* *genua*, *renuis*, &c. as,

Propterea qui corpus aquæ naturaque tennis. Lucr.
 Genva labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. Virg.
 Arjetat in portas & duros objice postes. Id.
 Velleraque ut foliis depectant tenvia Seres. Id.
 Ædificant, sectaque intexunt abjete costas. Id.
 Præcipue sanus, nisi cum pitvita molesta est. Hor.
 Parjetibusque premunt arctis, & quatuor addunt. Virg.
 Ut Nasidjeni juvit te cœna beati. Hor.

4. DIÆRESIS divides one syllable into two; as, *aulæi*, *for* *aulæ*; *Troïæ*, *for* *Trojæ*; *Persæus*, *for* *Perseus*; *milûus*, *for* *milvus*; *solûit*, *for* *solvit*; *volûit*, *for* *volvit*; *aquæ*, *sûetus*, *sûasit*, *Sûevos*, *relangûit*, *reliquas*, *for* *aquæ*, *fuetus*, &c. as,

Aula in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. Virg.
 Stamina non ulli dissoluenda Deo. Pentam. Tibullus.
 Debuerant suos evoluisse suos. Id. Ovid.
 Quæ calidum faciunt aquæ tactum atque vaporem. Lucr.
 Cum mihi non tantum furesque seræque suctæ. Hor.
 Atque alios alii inrident, Veneremque sudent. Lucr.
 Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Sûevos. Lucan.
 Imposito fratri moribunda relanguit ore. Ovid.
 Reliquas tamen esse vias in mente patentis. Lucr.

5. SYSTOLE is when a long syllable is made short; as the penult in *tulerunt*; thus,

Matri longa decem tulerunt fastidia menses. Virg.

6. **DIASTÖLE** is when a syllable usually short is made long ; as the last syllable in *amor*, in the following verse :

Confidant, si tantus amor, et mœnia condant.

To these may be subjoined the *Figures of Diction*, as they are called, which are chiefly used by the poets, tho' some of them likewise frequently occur in prose.

1. When a letter or syllable is added to the beginning of a word, it is called **PROSTHESIS** : as, *gnavus*, for *navus* ; *scâli*, for *tuli*. When a letter or syllable is interposed in the middle of a word, it is called **EPENTHESIS** ; as, *relligio*, for *religio* ; *induperator*, for *imperator*. When a letter or syllable is added to the end, it is called **PARAGÖGE** ; as, *dicier*, for *dici*.

2. If a letter or syllable be taken from the beginning of a word, it is called **APHÆRESIS** ; as, *natus*, for *gnatus* ; *tenderant*, for *tetenderant*. If from the middle of a word, it is called **SYNCÖPE** ; as, *dixti*, for *dixisti* ; *deûm*, for *deorum*. If from the end, **APOCÖPE** ; as, *viden'*, for *videſue* ; *Antônî*, for *Antonii*.

3. When a letter or syllable is transposed, it is called **METATHESIS** ; as, *piſtris*, for *pristis* ; *Lybia*, for *Libya*. When one letter is put for another, it is called **ANTITHESIS** ; as, *faciundum*, for *faciendum* ; *olli*, for *illi* ; *voltis*, for *vultis*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF POEMS.

Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem*, (*Poema* or *Carmen*).

Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an **EPITHALAMIUM** ; on a mournful subject, an **ELEGY** or **LAMENTATION** ; in praise of the supreme Being, a **HYMN** ; in praise of any person or thing, a **PANEGYRIC** or **ENCOMIUM** ; on the vices of any one, a **SATIRE** or **INVECTIVE** ; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an **EPITAPH**, &c.

2. A short poem adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an *ODE*, whence such compositions are called *Lyric Poems*: A poem in the form of a letter is called an *EPISTLE*; a short witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits, which arise from any subject, is called an *EPIGRAM*; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp, unexpected, lively turn of wit in the end of an epigram, is called its *Point*. A poem expressing the moral of any device or picture, is called an *EMBLEM*. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an *ÆNIGMA* or *RIDDLE*.

When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse, and sometimes the middle and final letters, express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an *ACROSTIC*; as the following on our Saviour;

*I*nter cuncta micans *I*gniti sidera cœl *I*,
*E*xpellit tenebras *E*toto Phœbus ut orb *E*;
*S*ic cœcas removet *J*ESVS caliginis umbra *S*,
*V*ivificansque simul *V*ero præcordia mot *V*,
*S*olem justitiæ *S*ese probat esse beati *S*.

3. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Æxgetic*, *Dramatic*, or *Mixt*.

The *Æxgetic*, where the poet always speaks himself, is of three kinds, *Historical*, *Didactic* or *Instructive*, (as the *Satire* or *Epistle*;) and *Descriptive*,

Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are *COMEDY*, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and *TRAGEDY*, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue. To which may be added *Pastoral Poems* or *Bucolics*, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the eclogues of Virgil,

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the *EPIC* or *HEROIC* poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as, the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Æneas in Italy in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds, the *Simple*, *ornate*, and *sublime*.

COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his Satyres and Epistles, Ovid in his Metamorphosis, Lucan, Silius Italicus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use Hexameter verse: Plautus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly those which are called Lyric poems, as the Odes of Horace and the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

A Poem which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, MONOCOLON, sc. *poema v. carmen*; or MONOCŌLOS, sc. *ode*: that which has two kinds, DICOLON; and that which has three kinds of verse, TRICOLON.

If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is called DICOLON DISTRŌPHON; as when a single Pentameter is alternately placed after an Hexameter, which is named *Elegiac verse* (*carmen Elegiacum*;) because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegia, solve capillos;
Ah! nimis ex vero nunc tibi nomen erit. Ovid.

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his other works except the Metamorphoses; and also for the most part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicolon Tristrŏphon*; when after four lines, *Dicolon Tetrastrŏphon*; as,

Auream quisquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obfoleti
Sordibus tecti; caret invidendâ
Sobrius aulâ. Horat.

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tri-*

colon Tristrophon ; but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricolon Tetrastraphon* ; as when after two greater dactylic alcaic verses are subjoined an archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic alcaic, which is named the *Carmen Horatianum*, or Horatian verse, because frequently used by Horace ; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori
Cœlum, negatâ tentat iter viâ ;
Cœtusque vulgares, et udam
Spernit humum fugiente pennâ.

Any one of these parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verse are comprehended, when taken by itself, is called a *Strophe*, *Stanza*, or *Staff*.

DIFFERENT kinds of VERSE in HORACE and BUCHANAN.

I. ODES and PSALMS of one kind of Verse.

1. *Asclepiadæan*, See N° 3, page 272. Hor. I. 1. IV. 8. III. 30.—Buch. Pf. 28, 40, 80.
2. *Choriambic Alcaic Pentameter*, consisting of a spondee, three choriambuses, and a pyrrychius or iambus : Hor. I. 11. 18. IV. 10.
3. *Iambic trimeter*, N° 11.—Hor. Epod. 17.—Buch. Pf. 25, 94, 106.
4. *Hexameter*, N° 1. Hor. Satyres and Epistles.—Buch. Pf. 1, 18, 45, 78, 85, 89, 104, 107, 132, 135.
5. *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 12.—Buch. Pf. 13, 31, 37, 47, 52, 54, 59, 86, 96, 98, 117, 148, 149, 150.
6. *The Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8.—Buch. Pf. 26, 29, 32, 49, 61, 71, 73, 143.
7. *Trochaic*, consisting of seven trochees and a syllable ; admitting also a tribrachys in the uneven places, i. e. in the first, third, fifth, and seventh foot ; and in the even places, a tribrachys, spondee, dactyle, and anapestus,—Buch. Pf. 105, 119, 124, 129.
8. *Anapestic*, consisting of four anapestuses, admitting also a spondee or dactyle ; and in the last place, sometimes a tribrachys, amphimæcer, or trochee.—Pf. 113.

9. *Anacreontic Iambic*, consisting of three iambuses, and a syllable ; in the first foot it has sometimes a spondee or anapestus, and also a tribrachys.—Pf. 131.

II. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse following one another alternately.

1. *Glyconian* and *Asclepiadean*, N° 4. and 3.—Hor. I. 3, 13, 19, 36. III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28. IV. 1, 3.—Buch. Pf. 14, 35, 43.

2. Every first line (*Dactylico-Trochaic*,) consisting of the first four feet of an hexameter verse, then three trochees or a spondee for the last ; every second verse (*Iambic Archilochian*) consisting of an iambus or spondaeus, an iambus, a cæsuræ, and then three trochees. Hor. I. 4.

3. The first line, *Hexameter*, and the second, *Alcmanian Dactylic*, consisting of the four last feet of an hexameter. Hor. I. 7, 28. Epod. 12.—Buch. Pf. 4, 111.

4. Every first line, *Aristophanic*, consisting of a choriambus, and bacchius or amphimacer : Every second line, *Choriambic Alcaic*, consisting of epitritus secundus, two choriambuses, and a bacchius. Hor. I. 8.

5. The first line, (*Trochaic*,) consisting of three trochees and a cæsuræ ; or of an amphimacer and two iambuses. The second line, *Archilochian Iambic*, N° 9. Hor. II. 18.

6. The first line, *Hexameter* ; the second (*Dactylic Archilochian*,) two dactyles and cæsuræ. Hor. IV. 7.—Buch. Pf. 12.

7. The first line, *Iambic Trimeter* ; and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11.—Hor. Epod. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.—Buch. Pf. 3, 6, 10, 21, 22, 27, 34, 38, 39, 41, 44, 48, 53, 62, 74, 76, 79, 87, 92, 110, 112, 115, 120, 127, 133, 134, 139, 141.

8. The first line, *Iambic Dimeter* ; the second (*Sapphic*,) consists of two dactyles, a cæsuræ, and four iambuses, ad-

mitting also a spondeus, &c. But this verse is commonly divided into two parts; the first, the latter part of a pentameter, N° 2. and the second, iambic dimeter, N° 11. Hor. Epod. 11.

9. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*. Hor. Epod. 14, 15. Buch. Pf. 81.

10. *Hexameter*, and *Iambic Trimeter*. Hor. Epod. 16. Buch. Pf. 2, 20, 24, 57, 60, 69, 83, 93, 95, 97, 108, 109, 118, 126, 136, 147.

11. The first line, *Sapphic*, N° 5. and the second *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11. Buch. Pf. 8.

12. *Sapphic* and *Glyconian*. Buch. Pf. 33, 70, 121, 142.

13. *Iambic Trimeter* and *Pentameter*. Buch. Pf. 36, 63.

14. The first line, *Hexameter*; and the second line, the three last feet of an hexameter, with a long syllable or two short syllables before. Buch. Pf. 68.

15. *Hexameter* and *Pentameter*, or *Elegiac verse*. Buch. Pf. 88, 114, 137.

16. The first line, (*Trochaic*,) three trochees and a syllable, admitting sometimes a spondee, tribrachys, &c. The second line, *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11. Buch. Pf. 100.

III. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The three first lines, *Sapphic*, and the fourth, *Adonian*, N° 5. Hor. Carm. I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38. II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16. III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27. IV. 2, 6, 11. *Carmen Secul.*—Buch. Pf. 5, 17, 51, 55, 65, 67, 72, 90, 101, 103.

2. The three first lines, *Afclepiadæan*, and the fourth, *Glyconian*. Hor. Carm. I. 6, 15, 24, 33. II. 12. III. 10, 16. IV. 5, 12. Buch. Pf. 23, 42, 75, 99, 102, 144.

3. The two first lines, *Ionic trimeter*, consisting of three *Ionici minores*; the third line, *Ionic tetrameter*, having one *Ionicus minor* more. Hor. III. 12.

W

4. The two first lines have four trochees, admitting, in the second foot, a spondee, dactyle, &c. The third line, the same; only wanting a syllable at the end. Buch. Pf. 66.

5. The three first lines, *Glyconian*, N° 4. admitting also a spondee or iambus in the first foot; the fourth line, *Pherecratian*, N° 6. Buch. Pf. 116, 122, 128.

IV. ODES and PSALMS of three kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The two first lines, *Asclepiadæan*, N° 3. the third line, *Pherecratian*, N° 6. and the fourth, *Glyconian*, N° 4. Hor. Carm. I. 5, 14, 21, 23. III. 7, 13. IV. 13.—Buch. Pf. 9, 64, 84, 130.

2. The first two lines, *the Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8. The third, *Archilochian Iambic*, N° 9. The fourth, *the Lesser Alcaic*, N° 10. Hor. Carm. I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37. II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20. III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29. IV. 4, 9, 14, 15. Buch. Pf. 7, 11, 15, 19, 30, 46, 50, 56, 58, 77, 82, 91, 123, 125, 140, 146.

3. The first line, *Glyconian*; the second, *Asclepiadæan*; the third a spondee, three choriambuses, and an iambus or pyrrhichius. Buch. Pf. 16.

4. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Iambic dimeter*; and the third, two dactyles and a syllable; Hor. Epod. 13. Buch. Pf. 138. Sometimes the two last verses are joined in one, or inverted; as, Buch. Pf. 145.

ENGLISH VERSE.

The quantity of syllables in English Verse is not precisely ascertained. With regard to this we are chiefly directed by the ear. Our monosyllables are generally either long or short, as occasion requires. And in words of two or more syllables, the accented syllable is always long.

Of English verse there are two kinds, one named *Rhyme*, and the other *Blank verse*.

In rhyme the lines are usually connected two and two, sometimes three and three in the final syllables. Two lines following one another thus connected, are called a *Couplet*, three lines, a *Triplet*.

In blank verse similarity of sound in the final syllables is carefully avoided.

In measuring most kinds of English verse, we find long and short syllables succeeding one another alternately; and therefore the accents should rest on every second syllable.

The feet by which English verse is commonly measured, are either *Iambic*, i. e. consisting of a short and a long syllable; as, *ălôft*, *crĕâte*; or *Trochaic*, i. e. consisting of a long and a short syllable; as, *hōly*, *lôstŷ*. In verses of the former kind the accents are to be placed on the even syllables; in the latter, on the odd syllables. But the measure of a verse in English is most frequently determined by its number of syllables only, without dividing them into particular feet.

I. IAMBIC MEASURE comprises verses,

1. Of *four syllables*, or of *two feet*; as,
 With ravish'd ears,
 The monarch hears. *Dryden*.
2. Of *six syllables*, or of *three feet*; as,
 Aloft in awful state,
 The godlike hero sat. *Dryden*.
3. Of *eight syllables*, or of *four feet*; as,
 While dangers hourly round us rise,
 No caution guards us from surprise. *Fran. Horace*.
4. Of *ten syllables*, or of *five feet*, which is the common measure of heroic and tragic poetry; as,
 Poetic fields encompass me around,
 And still I seem to tread on Classic ground;
 For here the muse so oft her harp has strung,
 That not a mountain rears its head unsung. *Addison*.

Obs. 1. In measures of this last sort, we sometimes find the last line of a couplet or triplet stretched out to twelve syllables, or six feet, which is termed an *Alexandrine* verse; thus,

A needless Alexandrine ends the song,
Which, like a wounded snake, drags its slow length along. *Pope.*
Waller was smooth; but Dryden taught to join }
The varying verse, the full resounding line, }
The long majestic march, and energy divine. } *Pope.*

We also find the last verse of a triplet stretched out to fourteen syllables, or seven feet, but then it has commonly an Alexandrine verse before it; thus,

For thee the land in fragrant flow'rs is drest;
For thee the ocean smiles, and smooths her wavy breast, }
And heaven itself with more serene and purer light is blest. } *Dryd.*

Sometimes also when there is no Alexandrine before it; thus,

At length by fate to power divine restor'd,
His thunder taught the world to know its lord, }
The god grew terrible again, and was again ador'd. } *Rowe.*

Obs. 2. The more strictly iambic these verses are, the more harmonious. In several of them, however, particularly in those of ten syllables, we often meet with a trochee, and likewise a spondee, instead of an iambus. Verses of heroic measure sometimes also admit a dactyle, or an anapestus, in place of the iambus; in which case a verse of five feet may comprehend eleven, twelve, thirteen, and even fourteen syllables; thus,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14
And many an humorous, many an amorous lay
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
Was sung by many a Bard on many a day.

This manner of writing every syllable fully is now generally used by the best poets, and seems much more proper than the ancient custom of cutting off vowels by

an apostrophe. Our language abounds too much in consonants of itself: the elision of vowels therefore should be avoided as much as possible, and ought only to be admitted where it is absolutely necessary; as, *o'er*, for *over*; *e'er*, for *ever*, &c. The same observation may be applied to every kind of measure.

II. TROCHAIC MEASURE comprises verses,

1. Of three syllables; as,

Dreadful gleams,
Dismal screams, &c. *Pope.*

2. Of five syllables; as,

In the days of old,
Stories plainly told,
Lovers felt annoy.

3. Of seven syllables; as,

Fairest piece of well form'd earth,
Urge not thus your haughty birth. *Waller:*

These are the measures which are most commonly used in English poetry, especially those of seven, eight, and ten syllables.

We have another measure very quick and lively, and therefore much used in songs, which may be called *Anapestic* measure, i. e. a verse consisting of feet of three syllables, two short, and one long, in which the accent rests upon every third syllable. Verses of anapestic measure consist of two, three, or four feet; that is, of six, nine, or twelve syllables; thus,

Let the loud trumpets sound,
Till the roofs all around,
The shrill echoes rebound. *Pope.*

From the plains, from the woodlands, and groves,
How the nightingales warble their loves! *Shenstone.*

May I govern my passions with absolute sway,
And grow wiser and better, as life wears away.

W 2

In this measure, a syllable is often retrenched from the first foot ; as,

The swórd or the dárt
Shall pierce my sad héart. *Addison.*

Ye shépherds so chéerful and gáy,
Whose flocks never cárelessly róam, &c.

I wóu'd to the mûses my time and my cáre,
Since néither could win me the smíles of the fáir. *Shenstone.*

These measures are variously combined together in *Stanzas*, particularly in short poems ; for generally in longer works the same measure is always observed.

Stanzas are composed of more or fewer verses, and these variously diversified, according to the nature of the subject, and the taste of the poet. But when they are stretched out to a great length, and consist of verses of many different measures, they are seldom agreeable.

Such poems as consist of stanzas, which are not confined to a certain number of verses, nor the verses to a certain number of syllables, nor the rhymes to a certain distance, are called *Irregular*, or *Pindaric odes*. Of this kind are several of the poems of Cowley. But in the odes of later authors, the numbers are exact, and the strophes regular.

Stanzas of four lines are the most frequent, in which the first verse answers to the third, and the third to the fourth. There is a stanza of this kind, consisting of verses of eight and of six syllables alternately, which is very often used, particularly in sacred poetry. Here for the most part the second and fourth lines only rhyme together ; as,

When all thy mercies, O my God,
My rising soul surveys ;
Transported with the view, I'm lost
In wonder, love, and praise. *Addison.*

Sometimes also the first and third lines answer to one another ; as,

Keep silence, all created things,
And wait your Maker's nod :
The muse stands trembling while she sings
The honours of her God. *Watts.*

This stanza is used in place of what anciently was comprehended in two verses, each consisting of fourteen syllables, having a pause after the eighth syllable.

Several of these measures are often varied by double endings, that is, by putting an additional short syllable at the end of the verse ; as,

1. *In heroic measure, or verses of ten syllables, both in blank verse and rhyme.*

In Blank Verse.

'Tis heaven itself that points out an hereafter. *Addison.*

In Rhyme, where it is called Double Rhymes.

The piece, you think, is incorrect ? Why take it,
I'm all submission ; what you'd have it, make it. *Pope.*

2. *In verses of eight syllables.*

They neither added nor confounded,
They neither wanted nor abounded.

3. *In verses of six syllables.*

'Twas when the seas were roaring,
With hollow blasts of wind,
A damsel lay deploring
All on a rock reclined. *Gay.*

4. *In verses of seven syllables.*

As Palemon, unsuspecting,
 Prais'd the sly musician's art ;
 Love, his slight disguise rejecting,
 Lodg'd an arrow in his heart. *Shenstone.*

5. *In verses of three syllables.*

Glooms inviting,
 Birds delighting. *Addison.*

6. *In the Anapestic measure.*

Ah ! friend, 'tis but idle to make such a pothar,
 Fate, fate has ordain'd us to plague one another. *Shenstone.*

Now with furies furrounded,
 Despairing, confounded. *Pope.*

Double Rhyme is used chiefly in poems of wit and humour, or in burlesque compositions.

Verses with double endings, in blank verse, most frequently occur in tragic poetry, where they often have a fine effect ; thus,

I here devote thee for my prince and country ;
 Let them be safe, and let me nobly perish. *Thompson.*

The dropping dews fell cold upon my head,
 Darkness inclos'd, and the winds whistled round me. *Otway.*

APPENDIX,

Of Capitals, Abbreviations, Numerical Characters, and the Division of the Roman Month.

Capitals, or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a small letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decimus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quintus*, T. *Titus*. So F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos*; as, M. F. *Marci Filius*, M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner, P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti*; S. C. *Senatus Consultum*; P. R. *Populus Romanus*; S. P. Q. R. *Senatus Populusque Romanus*; U. C. *Urbs Condita*; S. P. D. *Salutem plurimam dicit*; D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat*; D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque*; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sestertius*, equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books, A. D. marks *Anno Domini*; A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master of arts; M. D. *Medicinae Doctor*; LL. D. *Legum Doctor*; N. B. *Nota Bene*, &c.

Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital; as, Etc. *Et cetera*; Ap. *Appius*; Cn. *Cneius*; Op. *Opiter*; Sp. *Spurius*; Ti. *Tiberius*; Sex. *Sextius*; Cos. *Consul*; Cofs. *Consules*; Imp. *Imperator*; Impp. *Imperatores*.

In like manner, in English, Esq. *Esquire*; Dr. *Debtor* or *Doctor*; Acct. *Account*; MS. *Manuscript*; MSS. *Manuscripts*; Do. *Ditto*; Rt. Hon. *Right Honourable*, &c.

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id est*; h. e. *hoc est*; e. g. *exempli gratia*; v. g. *verbi gratia*.

Capitals were used by the ancient Romans, to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X. which are therefore called *Numerical Letters*. I, denotes *one*, V. *five*, X. *ten*, L. *fifty*, and C. *a hundred*. By the various combination of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

The repetition of a numerical letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, &c. But V. and L. are never repeated.

When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater, the less takes away what it stands for from the greater; but being placed after, adds what it stands for to the greater; thus,

IV. Four.	V. Five.	VI. Six.
IX. Nine.	X. Ten.	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty.	L. Fifty.	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninety.	C. A hundred.	CX. A hundred and ten.

A thousand is marked thus, *c*¹⁰⁰⁰, which in later times was contracted into *m*. *Five Hundred* is marked thus, *d*⁵⁰⁰, or, by contraction, *d*.

The annexing of *o* to *d*, makes its value ten times greater; thus *do*, marks *five thousand*; and *ooo*, *fifty thousand*.

The prefixing of *c*, together with the annexing of *o* to the number *c*¹⁰⁰⁰, makes its value ten times greater; thus, *ccdo*, denotes *ten thousand*; and *cccdo*, *a hundred thousand*. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, *cccdo*, *cccdo*, signified *two hundred thousand*, &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numerical letters. Thus, *iii* denotes *three thousand*; *x*, *ten thousand*.

But the modern manner of marking numbers is much more simple, by these ten characters, or *Figures*, which, from the ten fingers of the hands, were called *Digits*;

1 one, 2 two, 3 three, 4 four, 5 five, 6 six, 7 seven, 8 eight, 9 nine, 0 nought, nothing. The first nine are called *Significant Figures*. The last is called a *Cypher*.

Significant figures placed after one another, increase their value ten times at every remove from the right hand to the left thus,

8 Eight 85 Eighty-five. 856 Eight hundred and fifty-six. 8566 Eight thousand five hundred and sixty-six.

When cyphers are placed at the right hand of a significant figure, each cypher increases the value of the figure ten times : thus,

1 One.	10 Ten.	100 A hundred.	1000 A thousand.
2 Two.	20 Twenty.	200 Two hundred.	2000 Two thousand.

Cyphers are often intermixed with significant figures, thus, 20202, *Twenty thousand two hundred and two*.

The superiority of the present method of marking numbers over that of the Romans, will appear by expressing the present year both in letters and figures, and comparing them together : C10,13CCIxxx, or M,DCCCLxxx, 1780.

As the Roman manner of marking the days of their months was quite different from ours, it may perhaps be of use here to give a short account of it.

Division of the Roman Months.

The Romans divided their months into three parts, by *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*; the fifth day was called the *Nones*; and thirteenth day was called the *Ides*; except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the nones fell upon the seventh day, and the ides on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked *Kalendis Januariis* or *Januarii*, or by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias* or *Januarii*, scil. *ante*. The day before that, or the

thirtieth day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante* ; or, *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the ides, which were marked *Idibus Decembris*, or *Decembris* : The day before the ides, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante* : the day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and so back to the nones, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked, *Nonis Decembris* or *Decembris* ; The day before the nones, *Pridie Non Dec. &c.* and thus through all the months of the year.

In *Leap-year*, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii* or *Martias* ; and hence this year is called *Bissextilis*.

JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMQUE, NOVEMQUE tricenos ;
Unum plus reliqui ; FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti ;
At si bissextus fuerit ; superadditur unus.
Tu primam mensis lucem die esse kalendas,
Sex MAIUS, nonas, OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,
Quatuor at reliqui ; dahit idus quilibet octo.
Omnes post idus lucis die esse kalendas,
Nomen sortiri debent a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April, June, September, and October*, was marked XVIII. Kal. of the following month ; the 15th, XVII. Kal. &c. The 14th day of *January, August, and December*, XIX. Kal. &c. So the 16th day of *March, May, July, and October*, was marked XVII. Kal. &c. And the 14th day of February, XVI. Kal. Martii or Martias. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except *Aprilis*, which is used only as a Substantive.

FINIS.

